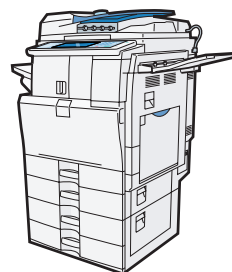




C9020/C9025
MP C2050/C2550
LD520C/LD525C
Aficio™ MP C2050/C2550

Operating Instructions

Network and System Settings Guide



-
- 1** System Settings
 - 2** Connecting the Machine
 - 3** Using a Printer Server
 - 4** Monitoring and Configuring the Printer
 - 5** Registering Address and Users for Facsimile / Scanner Functions
 - 6** Special Operations under Windows
 - 7** Appendix

TABLE OF CONTENTS

Manuals for This Machine.....	10
Notice.....	12
Important.....	12
How to Read This Manual.....	13
Symbols.....	13
Note.....	13
About IP Address.....	14
Laws and Regulations.....	15
Legal Prohibition.....	15
Display Panel.....	16
Accessing User Tools.....	17
Changing Default Settings.....	17
Quitting User Tools.....	18
1. System Settings	
General Features.....	19
Output Tray Settings.....	21
Tray Paper Settings.....	23
Timer Settings.....	28
Interface Settings.....	30
Network.....	30
Parallel Interface.....	33
Wireless LAN.....	34
Print List.....	36
File Transfer.....	38
Administrator Tools.....	45
Programming the LDAP server.....	55
Programming the LDAP server.....	55
Changing the LDAP server.....	59
Deleting the LDAP server.....	59
Programming the Realm.....	61
Programming the Realm.....	61
Changing the Realm.....	62
Deleting the Realm.....	63

2. Connecting the Machine

Connecting to the Interfaces.....	65
Connecting to the Ethernet Interface.....	66
Connecting to the Gigabit Ethernet Interface.....	67
Connecting to the USB Interface.....	69
Connecting to the IEEE 1284 Interface.....	70
Connecting to the Wireless LAN Interface.....	70
Network Settings Required to Use the Printer/LAN-Fax.....	73
Ethernet.....	73
Wireless LAN.....	74
Network Settings Required to Use Internet Fax.....	76
Ethernet.....	76
Wireless LAN.....	78
Network Settings Required to Use E-mail Function.....	80
Ethernet.....	80
Wireless LAN.....	81
Network Settings Required to Use Scan to Folder Function.....	84
Ethernet.....	84
Wireless LAN.....	85
Network Settings Required to Use the Network Delivery Scanner.....	87
Ethernet.....	87
Wireless LAN.....	88
Network Settings Required to Use WSD Scanner.....	90
Ethernet.....	90
Wireless LAN.....	91
Network Settings Required to Use Network TWAIN Scanner.....	93
Ethernet.....	93
Wireless LAN.....	94
Network Settings Required to Use Document Server.....	96
Ethernet.....	96
Wireless LAN.....	97
Using Utilities to Make Network Settings.....	99
Interface Settings.....	99

File Transfer.....	105
Connecting the Machine to a Telephone Line and Telephone.....	108
Connecting the Telephone Line.....	108
Selecting the Line Type.....	108
Connecting the Optional Handset or an External Telephone.....	108

3. Using a Printer Server

Preparing Printer Server.....	111
Using NetWare.....	112
Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 3.x).....	113
Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5).....	114
Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5/5.1 or 6/6.5 Environment.....	115
Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 3.x).....	117
Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5).....	119

4. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

Using Web Image Monitor.....	123
Displaying Top Page.....	124
When User Authentication is Set.....	126
About Menu and Mode.....	126
Access in the Administrator Mode.....	128
List of Setting Items.....	128
Displaying Web Image Monitor Help.....	135
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.....	137
Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.....	138
Changing the Network Interface Board Configuration.....	139
Locking the Menus on the Machine's Control Panel.....	140
Changing the Paper Type.....	141
Managing User Information.....	142
Configuring Energy Saver Mode.....	147
Setting a Password.....	147
Checking the Machine Status.....	148
Changing Names and Comments.....	149
Loading Fax Journal.....	150
Viewing and Deleting Spool Print Jobs.....	151

Managing Address Information.....	151
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	153
Monitoring Printers.....	153
Checking the Machine Status.....	154
When Using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	154
Printer Status Notification by E-Mail.....	156
Setting the Account for E-mail Notification.....	158
Mail Authentication.....	158
Auto E-mail Notification.....	159
On-demand E-mail Notification.....	160
Format of On-demand E-mail Messages.....	161
Remote Maintenance by telnet.....	162
Using telnet.....	162
access.....	163
appletalk.....	164
authfree.....	164
autonet.....	165
bonjour.....	166
btconfig.....	167
devicename.....	167
dhcp.....	168
dhcp6.....	169
diprint.....	169
dns.....	170
domainname.....	172
etherauth.....	173
help.....	173
hostname.....	173
ifconfig.....	174
info.....	175
ipp.....	175
ipsec.....	176
ipv6.....	176

logout.....	176
lpr.....	177
netware.....	177
passwd.....	179
pathmtu.....	179
prnlog.....	180
route.....	180
rhpp.....	181
set.....	182
show.....	185
slp.....	185
smb.....	185
snmp.....	186
sntp.....	189
spoolsw.....	190
ssdp.....	191
ssh.....	191
status.....	192
syslog.....	192
upnp.....	192
web.....	193
wiconfig.....	193
wins.....	197
wsmfp.....	199
8021x.....	200
SNMP.....	202
Getting Printer Information over the Network.....	203
Current Printer Status.....	203
Printer configuration.....	212
Understanding the Displayed Information.....	214
Print Job Information.....	214
Print Log Information.....	214
Configuring the Network Interface Board.....	215

Message List.....	226
System Log Information.....	226

5. Registering Addresses and Users for Facsimile/Scanner Functions

Address Book.....	237
Managing names in the Address Book.....	240
Sending fax by Quick Dial.....	240
Sending e-mail by Quick Dial.....	241
Sending received fax documents or scanned files to a shared folder directly.....	241
Preventing unauthorized user access to shared folders from the machine.....	241
Managing users and machine usage.....	241
Registering Names.....	243
Registering Names.....	243
Changing a Registered Name.....	244
Deleting a Registered Name.....	245
Authentication Information.....	247
Registering a User Code.....	247
Changing a User Code.....	249
Deleting a User Code.....	250
Displaying the Counter for Each User.....	252
Printing the Counter for Each User.....	252
Printing the Counter for All Users.....	253
Clearing the Number of Prints.....	254
Fax Destination.....	256
Registering a Fax Destination.....	257
Changing a Fax Destination.....	259
Deleting a Fax Destination.....	261
Registering an IP-Fax Destination.....	263
Changing a Registered IP-Fax Destination.....	264
Deleting a Registered IP-Fax Destination.....	267
E-mail Destination.....	268
Registering an E-mail Destination.....	268
Changing an E-mail Destination.....	270
Deleting an E-mail Destination.....	271

Registering Folders.....	273
Registering an SMB Folder.....	273
Changing an SMB Folder.....	276
Deleting an SMB registered folder.....	278
Registering an FTP Folder.....	279
Changing an FTP folder.....	281
Deleting an FTP folder.....	283
Registering an NCP folder.....	284
Changing an NCP registered folder.....	287
Deleting an NCP folder.....	289
Registering Names to a Group.....	290
Registering a Group.....	290
Registering Names to a Group.....	291
Adding a Group to Another Group.....	293
Displaying Names Registered in a Group.....	294
Removing a Name from a Group.....	295
Deleting a Group Within Another Group.....	296
Changing a Group Name.....	297
Deleting a Group.....	299
Registering a Protection Code.....	300
Registering a Protection Code to a Single User.....	300
Registering a Protection Code to a Group User.....	301
Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication.....	303
SMTP Authentication.....	303
LDAP Authentication.....	304

6. Special Operations under Windows

Printing Files Directly from Windows.....	307
Setup.....	307
Using a Host Name Instead of an IPv4 Address.....	307
Printing Commands.....	308
Printing with Bluetooth Connection.....	312
Supported Profiles.....	312
Adding a Bluetooth Printer.....	312

7. Appendix

When Using Windows Terminal Service/Citrix Presentation Server.....	315
Operating Environment.....	315
Supported Printer Drivers.....	315
Limitations.....	315
Using DHCP.....	317
Using AutoNet.....	317
Configuring the WINS Server.....	318
Using Web Image Monitor.....	318
Using telnet.....	318
Using the Dynamic DNS Function.....	320
Updating.....	320
DNS servers targeted for operation.....	321
DHCP servers targeted for operation.....	321
Setting the dynamic DNS function.....	321
Precautions.....	323
Connecting a Dial-Up Router to a Network.....	323
NetWare Printing.....	324
When the IEEE 802.11 Interface Unit is Installed.....	326
Configuring IEEE 802.1X.....	327
Installing a Site Certificate.....	327
Installing Device Certificate.....	328
Setting Items of IEEE 802.1X for Ethernet.....	329
Setting Items of IEEE 802.1X for Wireless LAN.....	330
Specifications.....	332
Copyrights.....	335
expat.....	335
NetBSD.....	335
Sablotron.....	337
JPEG LIBRARY.....	338
SASL.....	338
MD4.....	339
MD5.....	339

Samba(Ver 3.0.4).....	339
RSA BSAFE®	340
Open SSL.....	340
Open SSH.....	342
Open LDAP.....	346
Heimdal.....	347
IPS™ print language emulations.....	347
Trademarks.....	348
INDEX	351

Manuals for This Machine

Read this manual carefully before you use this machine.

Refer to the manuals that are relevant to what you want to do with the machine.

★ Important

- Media differ according to manual.
- The printed and electronic versions of a manual have the same contents.
- Adobe Acrobat Reader/Adobe Reader must be installed in order to view the manuals as PDF files.
- A Web browser must be installed in order to view the html manuals.

About This Machine

Before using the machine, be sure to read the section of this manual entitled Safety Information.

This manual introduces the machine's various functions. It also explains the control panel, preparation procedures for using the machine, how to enter text, how to install the CD-ROMs provided, and how to replace paper, toner, staples, and other consumables.

Troubleshooting

Provides a guide for resolving common usage-related problems.

Copy and Document Server Reference

Explains Copier and Document Server functions and operations. Also refer to this manual for explanations on how to place originals.

Facsimile Reference

Explains Facsimile functions and operations.

Printer Reference

Explains Printer functions and operations.

Scanner Reference

Explains Scanner functions and operations.

Network and System Settings Guide

Explains how to connect the machine to a network, configure and operate the machine in a network environment, and use the software provided. Also explains how to change User Tools settings and how to register information in the Address Book.

Security Reference

This manual is for administrators of the machine. It explains security functions that you can use to prevent unauthorized use of the machine, data tampering, or information leakage. For enhanced security, we recommend that you first make the following settings:

- Install the Device Certificate.
- Enable SSL (Secure Sockets Layer) Encryption.

- Change the user name and password of the administrator using Web Image Monitor.

For details, see "Setting Up the Machine", Security Reference.

Be sure to read this manual when setting the enhanced security functions, or user and administrator authentication.

PostScript 3 Supplement

Explains how to set up and use PostScript 3.

Other manuals

- UNIX Supplement
- Quick Reference Copy Guide
- Quick Reference Printer Guide
- Quick Reference Fax Guide
- Quick Reference Scanner Guide
- Manuals for DeskTopBinder Lite
 - DeskTopBinder Lite Setup Guide
 - DeskTopBinder Introduction Guide
 - Auto Document Link Guide

↓ Note

- Manuals provided are specific to machine types.
- For "UNIX Supplement", please visit our Web site or consult an authorized dealer. This manual includes descriptions of functions and settings that might not be available on this machine.
- The following software products are referred to using general names:

Product Name	General name
DeskTopBinder Lite and DeskTopBinder Professional* 1	DeskTopBinder
ScanRouter EX Professional* 1 and ScanRouter EX Enterprise* 1	the ScanRouter delivery software

* 1 Optional

Notice

Important

In no event will the company be liable for direct, indirect, special, incidental, or consequential damages as a result of handling or operating the machine.

For good copy quality, the supplier recommends that you use genuine toner from the supplier.

The supplier shall not be responsible for any damage or expense that might result from the use of parts other than genuine parts from the supplier with your office products.

How to Read This Manual

Symbols

This manual uses the following symbols:

Important

Indicates points to pay attention to when using the machine, and explanations of likely causes of paper misfeeds, damage to originals, or loss of data. Be sure to read these explanations.

Note

Indicates supplementary explanations of the machine's functions, and instructions on resolving user errors.

Reference

This symbol is located at the end of sections. It indicates where you can find further relevant information.

[]

Indicates the names of keys that appear on the machine's display panel.

[]

Indicates the names of keys on the machine's control panel.

Note

Contents of this manual are subject to change without prior notice.

Two kinds of size notation are employed in this manual. With this machine refer to the inch version.

Colors on color keys or the color circle may differ slightly from the colors of actual copies.

The color samples in this manual may differ slightly from the colors of actual copies.

Some illustrations in this manual might be slightly different from the machine.

Certain options might not be available in some countries. For details, please contact your local dealer.

Depending on which country you are in, certain units may be optional. For details, please contact your local dealer.

This machine comes in two models which vary in copy/print speed. To ascertain which model you have, see "Machine Types", About This Machine.

About IP Address

In this manual, "IP address" covers both IPv4 and IPv6 environments. Read the instructions that are relevant to the environment you are using.

Laws and Regulations

Legal Prohibition

Do not copy or print any item for which reproduction is prohibited by law.

Copying or printing the following items is generally prohibited by local law:

bank notes, revenue stamps, bonds, stock certificates, bank drafts, checks, passports, driver's licenses.

The preceding list is meant as a guide only and is not inclusive. We assume no responsibility for its completeness or accuracy. If you have any questions concerning the legality of copying or printing certain items, consult with your legal advisor.

This machine is equipped with a function that prevents making counterfeit bank bills. Due to this function the original images similar to bank bills may not be copied properly.

Display Panel

The display panel shows machine status, error messages, and function menus.

The function items displayed serve as selector keys. You can select or specify an item by lightly pressing it.

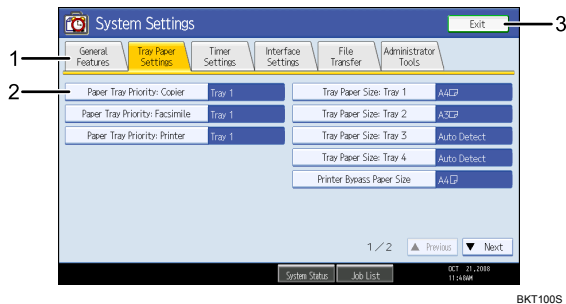
When you select or specify an item on the display panel, it is highlighted like **Program / Change**. Keys appearing as **OK** cannot be used.

★ Important

- A force or impact of more than 30 N (about 3 kgf) will damage the display panel.

To display the following screen, press the [User Tools/Counter] key to display the User Tools menu, and then press [System Settings].

Using the System Settings menu screen as an example, this section explains how to use the machine's display panel.



BKT100S

1. The menu tabs for various settings appear. To display the setting you want to specify or change, press the appropriate menu tab.
2. A list of settings appears. To specify or change a setting, press the appropriate key in the list.
3. Press this to quit the User Tools menu.

Accessing User Tools

This section describes how to access User Tools menu.

User Tools allow you to change or set defaults.

↓ Note

- Operations for system settings differ from normal operations. Always quit User Tools when you have finished.
- Any changes you make with User Tools remain in effect even if the main power switch or operation switch is turned off, or the [Energy Saver] or [Clear Modes] key is pressed.

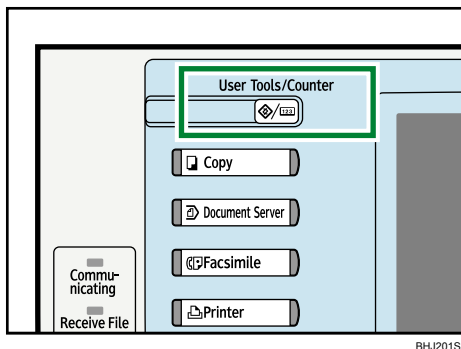
Changing Default Settings

This section describes how to change the settings of User Tools.

★ Important

- If **Administrator Authentication Management** is specified, contact your administrator.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



2. Press [System Settings].

3. Select the user tool you want to change.

4. Change settings by following instructions on the display, and then press [OK].

↓ Note

- To cancel changes made to settings and return to the initial display, press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- For details about specifying System Settings, see "System Settings".
- For details about specifying other settings such as adjusting color registration, see "Adjusting the Color Registration", Troubleshooting.

- For details about specifying other settings such as adjusting gradation, see "Auto Color Calibration", Troubleshooting.
- For details about specifying other settings such as setting plain paper, see "Changing Paper Thickness Settings", About This Machine.
- For details about specifying other settings such as setting changing the language, see "Changing the Display Language", About This Machine.
- For details about specifying other settings such as checking counter, see "Displaying the Total Counter", About This Machine.
- For details about specifying other settings such as checking inquiry, see "Inquiry", About This Machine.

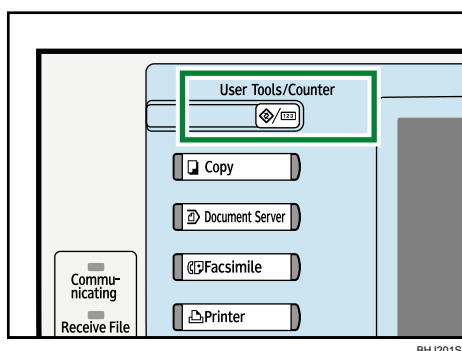
Reference

- p.19 "System Settings"

Quitting User Tools

This section describes how to quit the settings of User Tools.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.



Note

- You can also quit User Tools by pressing [Exit].

1. System Settings

This chapter describes user tools in the System Settings menu. For details on how to access System Settings, see "Accessing User Tools".

General Features

This section describes the user tools in the General Features menu under System Settings.

Program/Change/Delete User Text

You can register text phrases you often use when specifying settings, such as ".com" and "Regards".

You can register up to 40 entries.

- Program/Change
 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
 2. Press [System Settings].
 3. Check that [General Features] is selected.
 4. Press [Program/Change/Delete User Text].
 5. Check that [Program/Change] is selected.
 6. Select the user text you want to change.
 - To program new user text, press [Not Programmed].
 7. Enter the user text, and then press [OK].
 - Enter the user text using up to 80 characters.
 8. Press [Exit].
 9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- Delete
 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
 2. Press [System Settings].
 3. Check that [General Features] is selected.
 4. Press [Program/Change/Delete User Text].
 5. Press [Delete].
 6. Select the user text you want to delete.
 7. Press [Yes].
 8. Press [Exit].
 9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Panel Key Sound

The beeper (key tone) sounds when a key is pressed.

The default setting is [Medium].

Warm-up Beeper (copier/Document Server)

You can have the beeper sound when the machine becomes ready to copy after leaving Energy Saver mode, or when the power is turned on.

The default setting is [On].

If the Panel Tone setting is [Off], the beeper does not sound, whatever the Warm Up Notice setting.

Copy Count Display (copier/Document Server)

The copy counter can be set to show the number of copies made (count up) or the number of copies yet to be made (count down).

The default setting is [Up].

Function Priority

Specify the mode to be displayed immediately after the operation switch is turned on, or when System Reset mode is turned on.

The default setting is [Copier].

Print Priority

Print Priority is given to the mode selected.

The default setting is [Display Mode].

Function Reset Timer

You can set the length of time the machine waits before changing modes when using the multi-access function.

This is useful if you are making many copies and have to change settings for each copy. If you set a longer reset period, you can prevent interruption from other functions.

The default setting is [Set Time].

When you select [Set Time], enter the time (3-30 seconds, in 1 second increments) using the number keys.

The default setting for Function Reset Time is "3 second(s)".

The Function Reset Timer setting is ignored if Immediate is set for Print Priority.

Output: Copier (copier)

Specify a tray to which documents are delivered.

The default setting is [Internal Tray 1].

Output: Document Server (Document Server)

Specify a tray to which documents are delivered.

The default setting is [Internal Tray 1].

Output: Facsimile (facsimile)

Specify a tray to which documents are delivered.

The default setting is [Internal Tray 1].

Output: Printer (printer)

Specify a tray to which documents are delivered.

The default setting is [Internal Tray 1].

System Status/Job List Display Time

Specify how long to display the System Status and Job List display for.

The default setting is [On], "15 second(s)".

By selecting [On], you can specify a display time between 10 and 999 seconds.

Key Repeat

You can enable or disable repetition of an operation if a key on the screen or control panel is pressed continuously.

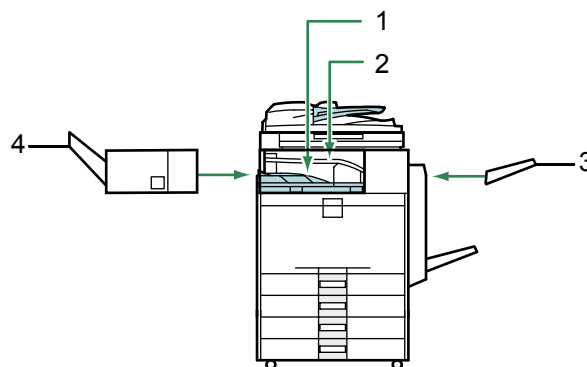
The default setting is [Normal].

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"

Output Tray Settings**★ Important**

- You cannot interrupt the current stapling job even if a stapling job is specified by a different function.
- When the optional finisher is installed and stapling or shift-sorting is specified, the job will be delivered to the finisher shift tray regardless of the output tray specified.



BKT010S

1. Internal Tray 1
2. Internal Tray 2

3. Right Tray

4. Finisher Shift Tray

Tray Paper Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Tray Paper Settings menu under System Settings.

★ Important

- If the specified paper size differs from the actual size of the paper loaded in the paper tray, a misfeed might occur because the correct paper size was not detected.

Paper Tray Priority: Copier (copier/Document Server)

Specify the tray to supply paper for output.

The default setting is [Tray 1].

Paper Tray Priority: Facsimile (facsimile)

Specify the tray to supply paper for output.

The default setting is [Tray 1].

Paper Tray Priority: Printer (printer)

Specify the tray to supply paper for output.

The default setting is [Tray 1].

Printer Bypass Paper Size

Specify the size of the paper in the bypass tray when printing data from the computer.

The paper sizes you can set for bypass tray are as follows:

- [Auto Detect]
- [12 × 18□], [11 × 17□], [8¹/₂ × 14□], [8¹/₂ × 13□], [8¹/₂ × 11□], [8¹/₄ × 13□], [8 × 13□], [7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂□], [5¹/₂ × 8¹/₂□], [4¹/₈ × 9¹/₂□], [3⁷/₈ × 7¹/₂□], [A3□], [A4□], [A5□], [A6□], [B4 JIS□], [B5 JIS□], [B6 JIS□], [C5 Env□], [C6 Env□], [DL Env□], [8K□], [16K□]
- [8¹/₂ × 11□], [7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂□], [A4□], [A5□], [B5 JIS□], [C5 Env□], [16K□]
- [Custom Size]

You can specify a custom size of between 3.55 - 12.00 in (90.0 - 305.0 mm) vertically, and between 5.83 - 23.62 in (148.0 - 600.0 mm) horizontally.

You can specify a custom size of between 3.55 - 12.00 in (90.0 - 305.0 mm) vertically, and between 5.83 - 49.60 in (148.0 - 1260.0 mm) horizontally. For details about specifying custom paper sizes, contact your sales or service representative.

Tray Paper Size: Tray 1 - 2

Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper tray.

The paper sizes you can set for tray 1 - 2 are as follows:

- [Auto Detect]

- [11 × 17], [11 × 15], [10 × 14], [8¹/₂ × 14], [8¹/₂ × 13], [8¹/₂ × 11], [8¹/₄ × 14], [8¹/₄ × 13], [8 × 13], [8 × 10], [7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂], [A3], [A4], [B4 JIS], [B5 JIS], [8K], [16K]
- [8¹/₂ × 11], [7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂], [A4], [A5], [B5 JIS], [16K]
- [Custom Size]

The default setting is [Auto Detect].

You can specify a custom size of between 7.17 - 11.69 in (182.0 - 297.0 mm) vertically, and between 5.83 - 17.00 in (148.0 - 432.0 mm) horizontally. If you need the paper size, contact your service representative.

Tray Paper Size: Tray 3 - 4 (When the lower paper trays are installed.)

Select the size of the paper loaded in the paper tray 3 - 4 (When the lower paper trays are installed).

The paper sizes you can set for tray 3-4 (When the lower paper trays are installed) are as follows:

- [Auto Detect]
- [11 × 17], [11 × 15], [10 × 14], [8¹/₂ × 14], [8¹/₂ × 13], [8¹/₂ × 11], [8¹/₄ × 14], [8¹/₄ × 13], [8 × 13], [8 × 10], [7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂], [A3], [A4], [A5], [B4 JIS], [B5 JIS], [8K], [16K]
- [8¹/₂ × 11], [7¹/₄ × 10¹/₂], [A4], [A5], [B5 JIS], [16K]
- [Custom Size]

The default setting is [Auto Detect].

You can specify a custom size of between 5.52 - 11.69 in (140.0 - 297.0 mm) vertically, and between 5.83 - 17.00 in (148.0 - 432.0 mm) horizontally. If you need the paper size, contact your service representative.

Paper Type: Bypass Tray

Sets the display so you can see what type of paper is loaded in the bypass tray.

The paper types you can set for the bypass tray are as follows:

- [No Display], [Recycled Paper], [Color Paper], [Letterhead], [Label Paper], [Preprinted Paper], [Bond Paper], [Cardstock], [OHP (Transparency)], [Special Paper 1], [Special Paper 2], [Special Paper 3], [Envelope], [Coated Paper], [Coated Paper: Gloss]

The paper thicknesses you can set for the bypass tray are as follows:

- [Thin Paper] (52.0 - 59.9 g/m², 14.0 - 15.9 lb.)
- [Plain Paper] (60.0 - 90.0 g/m², 16.0 - 24.0 lb.)
- [Middle Thick] (90.1 - 105.0 g/m², 24.0 - 28.0 lb.)
- [Thick Paper 1] (105.1 - 169.0 g/m², 28.0 - 45.0 lb.)
- [Thick Paper 2] (169.1 - 210.0 g/m², 45.0 - 56.0 lb.)
- [Thick Paper 3] (210.1 - 256.0 g/m², 56.0 - 68.0 lb.)

The default setting for "Paper Type" is [No Display].

The default setting for "Paper Thickness" is [Plain Paper].

For details about the relations between possible paper sizes and thickness, see "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types", About This Machine.

For details about the recommended conditions for using thick paper, see "Thick Paper", About This Machine.

Paper Type: Tray 1 - 2

Sets the display so you can see what type of paper is loaded in the paper tray 1 - 2.

The print function uses this information to automatically select the paper tray.

The paper types you can set for the paper tray 1 - 2 are as follows:

- [No Display], [Recycled Paper], [Color Paper], [Letterhead], [Label Paper], [Preprinted Paper], [Bond Paper], [Cardstock], [Special Paper 1], [Special Paper 2], [Special Paper 3], [Envelope], [Coated Paper], [Coated Paper: Gloss]

The paper thicknesses you can set for the paper tray 1 - 2 are as follows:

- [Plain Paper] (60.0 - 90.0 g/m², 16.0 - 24.0 lb.)
- [Middle Thick] (90.1 - 105.0 g/m², 24.0 - 28.0 lb.)
- [Thick Paper 1] (105.1 - 169.0 g/m², 28.0 - 45.0 lb.)
- [Thick Paper 2] (169.1 - 210.0 g/m², 45.0 - 56.0 lb.)
- [Thick Paper 3] (210.1 - 256.0 g/m², 56.0 - 68.0 lb.)

The default setting for "Paper Type" is [No Display].

The default setting for "Paper Thickness" is [Plain Paper].

The default setting for "Apply Duplex" is [Yes].

The default setting for "Apply Auto Paper Select" is [Yes].

The key mark is displayed next to the paper tray if [No] is selected in "Auto Paper Select".

Apply Auto Paper Select can only be selected for the copier function if [No Display] and [Recycled Paper] are selected. If [No] is selected, Apply Auto Paper Select is not valid.

For details about the relations between possible paper sizes and thickness, see "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types", About This Machine.

For details about the recommended conditions for using thick paper, see "Thick Paper", About This Machine.

Paper Type: Tray 3 - 4 (When the lower paper trays are installed.)

Sets the display so you can see what type of paper is loaded in the paper tray 3 - 4 (when the lower paper trays are installed).

The print function uses this information to automatically select the paper tray.

The paper types you can set for the paper tray 3-4 (when the lower paper trays are installed) are as follows:

- [No Display], [Recycled Paper], [Color Paper], [Letterhead], [Label paper], [Preprinted Paper], [Bond Paper], [Cardstock], [Special Paper 1], [Special Paper 2], [Special Paper 3]

The paper thicknesses you can set for the paper tray 3-4 (when the lower paper trays are installed) are as follows:

- [Plain Paper] (60.0 - 90.0 g/m², 16.0 - 24.0 lb.)
- [Middle Thick] (90.1 - 105.0 g/m², 24.0 - 28.0 lb.)

The default setting for "Paper Type" is [No Display].

The default setting for "Paper Thickness" is [Plain Paper].

The default setting for "Apply Duplex" is [Yes].

The default setting for "Apply Auto Paper Select" is [Yes].

The key mark is displayed next to the paper tray if [No] is selected in "Apply Auto Paper Select".

Apply Auto Paper Select can only be selected for the copier function if [No Display] and [Recycled Paper] are selected. If [No] is selected, Apply Auto Paper Select is not valid.

For details about the relations between possible paper sizes and thickness, see "Recommended Paper Sizes and Types", About This Machine.

For details about the recommended conditions for using thick paper, see "Thick Paper", About This Machine.

Cover Sheet Tray

You can specify and display the paper tray that is used to set front cover sheets. After selecting the paper tray, you can also specify the display timing and copy method for two-sided copying.

The default setting is [Off].

When [At Mode Selected] is selected, front cover sheet tray settings only appear when the cover function or slip sheet function is selected.

When [Full Time] is selected, the front cover sheet tray is always displayed.

Slip Sheet Tray

You can specify and display the paper tray that is used for setting slip sheets.

You can also specify the display timing and copy method for two-sided copying.

The default setting is [Off].

When [At Mode Selected] is selected, slip sheet tray settings only appear when the cover function or slip sheet function is selected.

When [Full Time] is selected, the slip sheet tray is always displayed.

↓ Note

- The paper types you can set for this machine are [Plain Paper 1] and [Plain Paper 2]. The default setting is [Plain Paper 2].
- For details about setting the paper type, see "Plain Paper Setting", About This machine.

- For details about setting the paper type, see “Changing Paper Thickness Settings”, About This Machine.

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"

Timer Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Timer Settings menu under System Settings.

Auto Off Timer (Type 1)

After a specified period has passed, following job completion, the machine automatically turns off, in order to conserve energy. This function is called "Auto Off".

The machine status after the Auto Off operation is referred to as "Sleep mode".

For the Auto Off Timer, specify the time to elapse before Auto Off.

The default setting is "20" min.

The time can be set from 1 to 240 minutes, using the number keys.

Auto Off may not work when error messages appear.

Auto Off Timer (Type 2)

After a specified period has passed, following job completion, the machine automatically turns off, in order to conserve energy. This function is called "Auto Off".

The machine status after the Auto Off operation is referred to as "Sleep mode".

For the Auto Off Timer, specify the time to elapse before Auto Off.

The default setting is "30" min.

The time can be set from 1 to 240 minutes, using the number keys.

Auto Off may not work when error messages appear.

Panel Off Timer

Set the amount of time the machine waits before switching the panel off after copying has finished or the last operation is performed.

Enter a time interval between 10 seconds and 240 minutes, using the number keys.

The default setting is "1 minute (s)".

System Auto Reset Timer

The System Reset setting automatically switches the screen to that of the function set in Function Priority when no operations are in progress, or when an interrupted job is cleared. This setting determines the system reset interval.

The time can be set from 10 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is [On], "60" second (s).

Copier / Document Server Auto Reset Timer (copier/Document Server)

Specifies the time to elapse before copier and Document Server modes reset.

If [Off] is selected, the machine does not automatically switch to the user code entry screen.

The time can be set from 10 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is [On], "60" second (s).

Facsimile Auto Reset Timer (facsimile)

Specify the time to elapse before the facsimile mode resets.

The time can be set from 30 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is "30" second (s).

Printer Auto Reset Timer (printer)

Specify the time to elapse before the printer function resets.

The time can be set from 10 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is [On], "60" second (s).

Scanner Auto Reset Timer (scanner)

Specify the time to elapse before the scanner function resets.

If [Off] is selected, the machine will not automatically switch to the user code entry screen.

The time can be set from 10 to 999 seconds, using the number keys.

The default setting is [On], "60" second (s).

Set Date

Set the date for the copier's internal clock using the number keys.

To change between year, month, and day, press [←] and [→].

Set Time

Set the time for the copier's internal clock using the number keys.

Enter the time using the 12-hour format (in 1 second increments).

To change between hours, minutes and seconds, press [←] and [→].

Auto Logout Timer

Specify whether or not to automatically log out a user when the user does not operate the machine for a specified period of time after logging in.

The time can be set from 60 to 999 seconds, in one second increments, using the number keys.

The default setting is [On], "180" second (s).

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"

Interface Settings

This section describes the user tools in the Interface Settings menu under System Settings.

Network

This section describes the user tools in the Network menu under Interface Settings.

Machine IPv4 Address

Specify the machine's IPv4 network address.

The default setting is [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)].

When you select [Specify], enter the IPv4 address and subnet mask as "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" ("x" indicates a number).

When you select [Specify], make sure that IPv4 address is different from that of other machines on the network.

The physical address (MAC address) also appears.

IPv4 Gateway Address

A gateway is a connection or interchange point between two networks.

Specify the gateway address for the router or host computer used as a gateway.

The default setting is "0.0.0.0".

Machine IPv6 Address

Displays the machine's IPv6 network address.

- Link-local Address

The machine's specified link-local address appears.

- Manual Configuration Address

The machine's manually configured address appears.

- Stateless Address: 1-5

The specified stateless address appears.

IPv6 Gateway Address

Displays the machine's IPv6 gateway address.

IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration

Specify IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration.

The default setting is [Active].

DNS Configuration

Make settings for the DNS server.

The default setting is [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)].

When you select [Specify], enter the DNS Server IPv4 address as "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" ("x" indicates a number).

DDNS Configuration

Specify the DDNS settings.

The default setting is [Active].

IPsec

Specify the machine's IPsec function Active/Inactive.

The default setting is [Inactive].

Domain Name

Specify the domain name.

The default setting is [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)].

When you select [Specify], enter the domain name using up to 63 characters.

WINS Configuration

Specify the WINS server settings.

The default setting is [On].

If [On] is selected, enter the WINS Server IPv4 address as "xxx.xxx.xxx.xxx" ("x" indicates a number).

If DHCP is in use, specify the Scope ID. Enter a Scope ID using up to 31 characters.

Effective Protocol

Select the Protocol to use in the network.

The default setting for "IPv4" is [Active].

The default setting for "IPv6" is [Inactive].

The default setting for "NetWare" is [Inactive].

The default setting for "SMB" is [Active].

The default setting for "AppleTalk" is [Active].

NCP Delivery Protocol

Select the protocol NCP delivery.

The default setting is [TCP / IP Priority].

If you select [IPX Only] or [TCP / IP Only], you cannot switch the protocol even if you cannot connect with it. If "NetWare" in "Effective Protocol" is set to [Inactive], you can only use TCP/IP.

NW Frame Type

Select the frame type when you use NetWare.

The default setting is [Auto Select].

SMB Computer Name

- Specify the SMB computer name.
- Enter the computer name using up to 15 characters.
- "*+./:;<>=?[\]|" and spaces cannot be entered.
- Do not set a computer name starting with RNP and rnp.
- Use uppercase letters for alphabets.

SMB Work Group

- Specify the SMB work group.
- Enter the computer name using up to 15 characters.
- "*+./:;<>=?[\]|" and spaces cannot be entered.
- Use uppercase letters for alphabet.

Ethernet Speed

- Set the access speed for networks.
- The default setting is [Auto Select].
- Select a speed that matches your network environment. [Auto Select] should usually be selected.

	10Mbps Half Duplex	10Mbps Full Duplex	100Mbps Half Duplex	100Mbps Full Duplex	Auto Select
10Mbps Half Duplex	☒	☐	☐	☐	☒
10Mbps Full Duplex	☐	☒	☐	☐	☐
100Mbps Half Duplex	☐	☐	☒	☐	☒
100Mbps Full Duplex	☐	☐	☐	☒	☐
Auto Select	☒	☐	☒	☐	☒

IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet

- Specify the IEEE 802.1X authentication for Ethernet.
- The default setting is [Inactive].
- For details about IEEE 802.1X authentication, see "Configuring IEEE 802.1X".

Restore IEEE 802.1X Authentication to Defaults

- You can return the IEEE 802.1X authentication settings to their defaults.

For details about IEEE 802.1X authentication, see "Configuring IEEE 802.1X".

LAN Type

When you have installed the Wireless LAN interface unit, select the method of connection.

The default setting is [Ethernet].

[LAN Type] is displayed when wireless LAN board is installed. If Ethernet and Wireless LAN are both connected, the selected interface has priority.

Ping Command

Check the network connection with ping command using given IPv4 address.

If you fail to connect to the network, check the following, and then retry the ping command.

- Make sure that "IPv4" in [Effective Protocol] is set to [Active].
- Check that the machine with assigned IPv4 address is connected to the network.
- There is a possibility that the same IPv4 address is used for the specified equipment.

Permit SNMPv3 Communication

Set the encrypted communication of SNMPv3.

The default setting is [Encryption / Cleartext].

If you select to [Encryption Only], you need to set an encryption password for the machine.

Permit SSL / TLS Communication

Set the encrypted communication of SSL/TLS.

The default setting is [Ciphertext Priority].

If you set to [Ciphertext Only], you need to install the SSL certificate for the machine.

Host Name

Specify the host name.

Enter the host name using up to 63 characters.

Machine Name

Specify the machine name.

Enter the machine name using up to 31 characters.

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.327 "Configuring IEEE 802.1X"

Parallel Interface

This section describes the user tools in the Parallel Interface menu under Interface Settings.

[Parallel Interface] is displayed when this machine is installed with the IEEE 1284 interface board.

Parallel Timing

Sets the timing for the control signal of the parallel interface.

Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

The default setting is [ACK Outside].

Parallel Communication Speed

Sets the communication speed for the parallel interface. If the speed is too high, data may not be transferred smoothly. If this happens, change the setting to [Standard].

The default setting is [High Speed].

Selection Signal Status

Sets the level for the select signal of the parallel interface.

The default setting is [High].

Input Prime

Sets whether to validate or invalidate the input prime signal upon reception.

Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

The default setting is [Inactive].

Bidirectional Communication

Sets the printer's response mode to a status acquisition request when using a parallel interface. If you experience problems using another manufacturer's machine, set this to [Off].

The default setting is [On].

When set to [Off], the bidirectional communication function will be disabled, and the printer driver will not be installed under Windows Auto Detect function.

Signal Control

Specifies how error during printing or sending facsimile from the computer is to be dealt with.

Normally, you do not need to change this setting.

The default setting is [Job Acceptance Priority].

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"

Wireless LAN

This section describes the user tools in the Wireless LAN menu under Interface Settings.

[Wireless LAN] is displayed when this machine is installed with the wireless LAN interface board.

Be sure to make all settings simultaneously.

Communication Mode

Specifies the communication mode of the wireless LAN.

The default setting is [Infrastructure Mode].

SSID Setting

Specifies SSID to distinguish the access point in [Infrastructure Mode] or [802.11 Ad-hoc Mode].

The characters that can be used are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes).

If blank is specified in [802.11 Ad-hoc Mode], "SSID" appears.

Ad-hoc Channel

Specify the channel to use when [802.11 Ad-hoc Mode] has been selected. Set the channel that matches the type of wireless LAN being used.

The following channels are available:

- IEEE 802.11 a/b/g Wireless LAN
 - Frequency range:
 - 2400-2497 MHz ([1]-[13] channels)
 - 5150-5350 MHz ([36], [40], [44], and [48] channels)
- IEEE 802.11 b/g Wireless LAN
 - Frequency range:
 - 2412-2462 MHz ([1]-[11] channels)

The default setting is [11].

The channel in use might differ depending on the country.

Security Method

Specifies the encryption of the Wireless LAN.

The default setting is [Off].

If you select [WEP], always enter WEP key. If you select [WPA], specify the encryption and authentication methods.

Specify "WPA", when [Communication Mode] is set to [Infrastructure Mode].

- WEP
 - If you select [WEP], enter WEP key.
 - When using 64 bit WEP, up to 10 characters can be used for hexadecimal and up to five characters for ASCII. When using 128 bit WEP, up to 26 characters can be used for hexadecimal and up to 13 characters for ASCII.
 - The number of characters that can be entered is limited to 10 or 26 for hexadecimal and 5 or 13 for ASCII.
- WPA

- WPA Encryption Method

Select either [TKIP] or [CCMP (AES)].

- WPA Authent. Method

Select either [WPA-PSK], [WPA], [WPA2-PSK], or [WPA2].

If you selected [WPA-PSK] or [WPA2-PSK], enter the pre-shared key (PSK) of 8- 63 characters in ASCII code.

When [WPA] or [WPA2] are selected, authentication settings and certificate installation settings are required. For details about setting methods, see "Configuring IEEE 802.1X".

Wireless LAN Signal

When using in infrastructure mode, you can check the machine's radio wave status using the control panel.

Radio wave status is displayed when you press [Wireless LAN Signal].

Restore Factory Defaults

You can return the wireless LAN settings to their defaults.

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.327 "Configuring IEEE 802.1X"

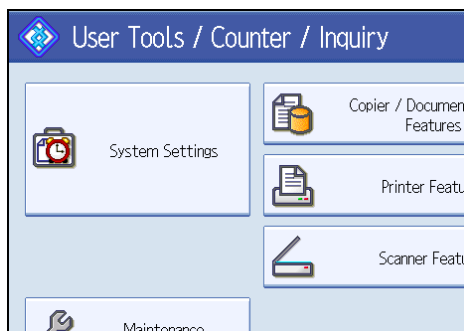
Print List

This section describes how to print the configuration page.

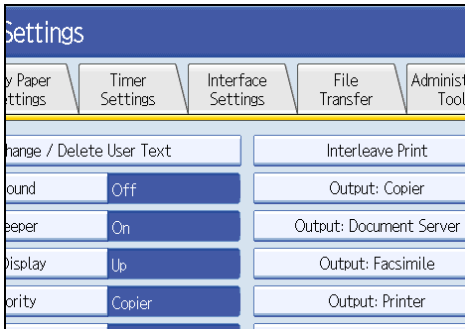
You can check items related to the network environment.

The configuration page shows the current network settings and network information.

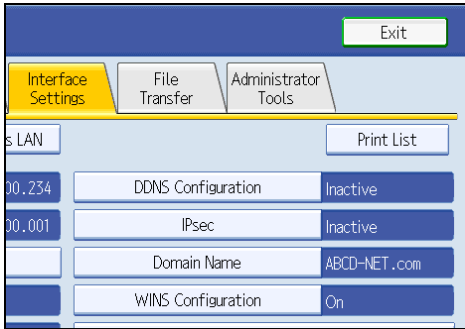
1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Interface Settings].



4. Press [Print List].



5. Press the [Start] key.

The configuration page is printed.

6. Press [Exit].

7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- You can also exit by pressing [Exit] on the User Tools main menu.

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"

File Transfer

This section describes the user tools in the File Transfer menu under System Settings.

Delivery Option

Enables or disables sending stored or scanned documents to the ScanRouter delivery server.

The default setting is [Off].

Specify this option when selecting whether or not to use the ScanRouter delivery software. If you do, you will have to preregister I/O devices in the ScanRouter delivery software.

Capture Server IPv4 Address

Specify the capture server IPv4 address.

This setting appears when the File Format Converter is installed, and when the capture function is being used by the ScanRouter delivery software.

Fax RX File Transmission

Specify how to deliver fax files received via the different lines.

- Setting per Line

Specifies whether or not received fax documents are sent to the ScanRouter delivery software for each fax line.

- Line 1
- E-mail
- IP-Fax

The default setting is [Do not Deliver].

The lines appear according to the operating environment.

- RX File Delivery

Specifies whether or not received fax documents are sent to the ScanRouter delivery software for each fax line.

The default setting is [Do not Deliver].

- Print at Deliver

Specify whether or not received fax documents sent to the ScanRouter delivery software should also be printed at the same time.

The default setting is [Do not Print].

- File to Deliver

Specify whether all received fax documents or only received fax documents that include delivery codes (documents with an ID or SUB/SEP codes) are sent to the ScanRouter delivery software.

The default setting is [All Files].

- Delivery Failure File

If a received fax document cannot be sent to the ScanRouter delivery software, it is stored in memory. To print a stored file, select [Print File], to delete, select [Delete File].

If the machine can send the data to the ScanRouter delivery software, it does so automatically. If you delete the data, you will not be able to distribute or print it.

- Print File
- Delete File

This setting appears when the delivery function is being used by the ScanRouter delivery software.

SMTP Server

Specify the SMTP server name.

If DNS is in use, enter the host name.

If DNS is not in use, enter the SMTP server IPv4 address.

The default setting for "Port No." is "25".

Enter the server name using up to 127 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

Enter port number between 1 and 65535 using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

The SMTP server shares the same port number with the Direct SMTP server.

SMTP Authentication

Specify SMTP authentication (PLAIN, LOGIN, CRAMMD5, DIGEST-MD5). When sending e-mail to an SMTP server, you can enhance the SMTP server security level using authentication that requires entering the user name and password.

If the SMTP server requires authentication, set [SMTP Authentication] to [On], and then specify the user name, password and encryption.

Enter the user name and password to be set for the Administrator's e-mail address when using Internet Fax.

The default setting is [Off].

- Enter the user name using up to 191 characters.
Spaces cannot be entered. Depending on the SMTP server type, "realm" must be specified. Add "@" after the user name, as in "user name@realm".
- Enter the E-mail address using up to 128 characters.
- Enter the password using up to 128 characters.
Spaces cannot be entered.
- Select Encryption as follows:
"Encryption"-[Auto]
Use if the authentication method is PLAIN, LOGIN, CRAM-MD5, or DIGEST-MD5.
"Encryption"-[On]
Use if the authentication method is CRAMMD5 or DIGEST-MD5.

"Encryption"-[Off]

Use if the authentication method is PLAIN, or LOGIN.

POP before SMTP

Specify POP authentication (POP before SMTP).

When sending e-mail to an SMTP server, you can enhance the SMTP server security level by connecting to the POP server for authentication.

The default setting is [Off].

If you set POP before SMTP to [On], specify the waiting time after authentication, user name, e-mail address, and password.

- Wait Time after Authent.: "300" msec.

Specify [Wait Time after Authent.] from zero to 10,000 milliseconds, in increments of one millisecond.

- User Name

Enter the user name using up to 191 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

- E-mail Address

Enter the E-mail Address using up to 128 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

- Password

Enter the password using up to 128 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

To enable POP server authentication before sending e-mail via the SMTP server, set [POP before SMTP] to [On]. E-mail is sent to the SMTP server after the time specified for [Wait Time after Authent.] has elapsed.

If you select [On], enter server name in POP3/IMAP4 Settings. Also, check POP3 port number in E-mail Communication Port.

Reception Protocol

Specify the Reception Protocol for receiving Internet Fax.

The default setting is [POP3].

POP3 / IMAP4 Settings

Specify the POP3/IMAP4 server name for receiving Internet faxes.

The specified POP3/IMAP4 server name is used for [POP before SMTP].

The default setting is [Auto].

- Server Name

If DNS is in use, enter the host name.

If DNS is not in use, enter the POP3/IMAP4 or server IPv4 address.

Enter POP3/IMAP4 server name using up to 127 characters. Spaces cannot be entered.

- Select Encryption as follows:

"Encryption" -[Auto]

Password encryption is automatically set according to the POP/IMAP server settings.

"Encryption" -[On]

Encrypt password.

"Encryption" -[Off]

Do not encrypt password.

Administrator's E-mail Address

Specify the Administrator's E-mail Address.

If a failure occurs in the machine or consumables need to be replaced, e-mail messages are sent to the Administrator's E-mail Address by E-mail Notification function.

On e-mailed scanned documents, if the sender is not specified this appears as the sender's address.

When sending e-mail under the Internet fax function, administrator's e-mail address will appear as the sender's address under the following conditions:

- The sender has not been specified and the machine's e-mail address has not been registered.
- The specified sender is not registered in the machine's address book and the machine's e-mail address has not been registered.

When conducting SMTP authentication for the transmitted files under the Internet fax function, the Administrator's E-mail Address will appear in the "From:" box. If you have specified the user name and e-mail address in [SMTP Authentication], make sure to specify this setting.

Enter up to 128 characters.

On e-mailed scanned documents, if [Auto Specify Sender Name] is [Off], specify the sender.

E-mail Communication Port

Specify the port numbers for receiving Internet faxes. The specified POP3 port number is used for [POP before SMTP].

The default setting for POP3 is "110".

The default setting for IMAP4 is "143".

Enter a port number between 1 and 65535 using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

E-mail Reception Interval

Specify, in minutes, the time interval for receiving Internet faxes via POP3 or IMAP4 server.

The default setting is [On], "15 minute (s)".

If [On] is selected, the time can be set from 2 to 1440 minutes in increments of one minute.

Max. Reception E-mail Size

Specify the maximum reception e-mail size for receiving Internet faxes.

The default setting is "2" MB.

Enter a size from 1 - 50 MB in increments of one megabyte.

E-mail Storage in Server

Specify whether or not to store received Internet fax e-mails on the POP3 or IMAP4 server.

The default setting is [Off].

Default User Name / Password (Send)

Specify the user name and password required when sending scan files directly to a shared folder on a computer running Windows, to an FTP server, or to a NetWare server.

Enter in up to 128 characters.

Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message

You can program, change, or delete the e-mail message used when sending an Internet fax or scan file as an attachment.

- Program/Change:

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [File Transfer].
4. Press [▼Next].
5. Press [Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message].
6. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
7. Press [*Not Programmed].

To change the registered e-mail message, select the e-mail message to change.

8. Press [Change] under the "Name".
9. Enter a name, and then press [OK].

Enter the name using up to 20 characters.

10. Press [Edit].

To start a new line, press [OK] to return to the e-mail message screen, and then press [▼Next] in "Select Line to Edit:".

11. Enter the text, and then press [OK].

Enter up to five lines of text. Each line can consist of up to 80 characters.

12. Press [OK].

13. Press [Exit].

14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

- Delete:

1. Press the [User tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [File Transfer].

4. Press [▼Next].
5. Press [Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message].
6. Press [Delete].
7. Select the e-mail message to delete.
The confirmation message about deleting appears.
8. Press [Yes].
9. Press [Exit].
10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Auto Specify Sender Name

Set whether or not to specify the name of the sender when sending e-mail.

The default setting is [Off].

- On

If you select [On], the specified e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box. If you do not specify the sender's address, the administrator's e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box.

If you do not specify the sender when sending a file by e-mail under the fax function, or if the specified e-mail address is not registered in the machine's address book, the machine's e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box. If the machine does not have an e-mail address, the administrator's e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box.

- Off

If you select [Off], the specified e-mail address will appear in the "From:" box, but you cannot send e-mail without specifying the sender's e-mail address. Under the fax function, you cannot send e-mail if the specified sender's e-mail address is not registered in the machine's address book.

Fax E-mail Account

Specify e-mail address, user name and password for receiving Internet faxes.

The default setting is [Do not Receive].

- E-mail Address

Enter an e-mail address using up to 128 characters.

- User Name

Enter a user name using up to 191 characters.

- Password

Enter a password using up to 128 characters.

Scanner Resend Interval Time

Specifies the interval the machine waits before resending a scan file, if it cannot be sent to the delivery server or mail server.

The default setting is "300" second (s).

The interval time can be set from 60 to 900 seconds in one second increments, using the number keys.

This setting is for the scanner function.

This setting is not valid for the WSD scanner function.

Number of Scanner Resends

Sets a maximum number of times a scan file is resent to the delivery server or mail server.

The default setting is [On], "3" time (s).

If [On] is selected, the number of times can be set from 1 to 99.

This setting is for the scanner function.

This setting is not valid for the WSD scanner function.

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"

Administrator Tools

This section describes the user tools in the Administrator Tools menu under System Settings.

Administrator Tools are used by the administrator. To change these settings, contact the administrator.

We recommend specifying Administrator Authentication before making Administrator Tools settings.

Address Book Management

You can add, change or delete information registered in the Address Book.

For details, see "Address Book".

- Program / Change

You can register and change names as well as user codes.

- Names

You can register a name, key display, registration number, and title selection.

- Auth. Info

You can register a user code, and specify the functions available to each user code. You can also register user names and passwords to be used when sending e-mail, sending files to folders, or accessing an LDAP server.

- Protection

You can register a protection code.

- Fax Dest.

You can register a fax number, international TX mode, fax header, label insertion, IP-Fax destination, and protocol.

- E-mail

You can register an e-mail address.

- Folder

You can register the protocol, path, port number, and server name.

- Add to Group

You can put names registered in the Address Book into a group.

- Delete

You can delete a name from the Address Book.

You can register up to 2,000 names.

You can register up to 440 user codes.

You can also register and manage names in the Address Book using Web Image Monitor or SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group

Names registered in the Address Book can be added into a group. You can then easily manage the names registered in each group.

- Program/Change

You can register and change groups.

- Names

You can register a name, key display, registration number, and title selection.

- Programmed User/Group

You can check the names or groups registered in each group.

- Protection

You can register a protection code.

- Add to Group

You can put groups registered in the Address Book into a group.

- Delete

You can delete a group from the Address Book.

You can register up to 100 groups.

You can also register and manage groups in the Address Book using Web Image Monitor or SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin provided with the printer scanner unit.

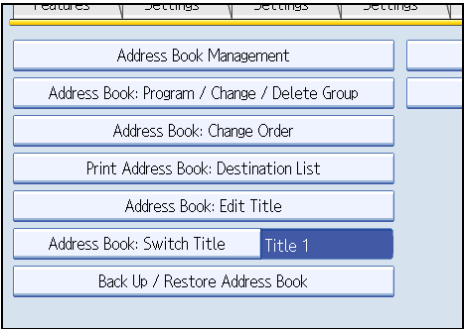
Address Book: Change Order

Changes the order of registered names.

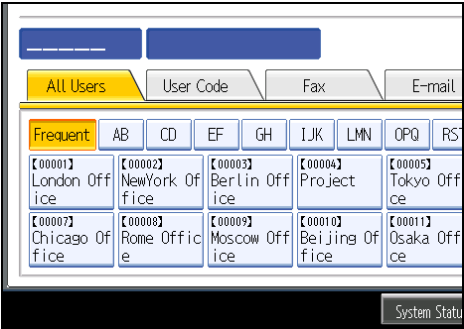
You can rearrange the order of items on the same page, but you cannot move items to another page.

For example, you cannot move an item from "PLANNING" ([OPQ]) to "DAILY" ([CD]).

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book: Change Order].

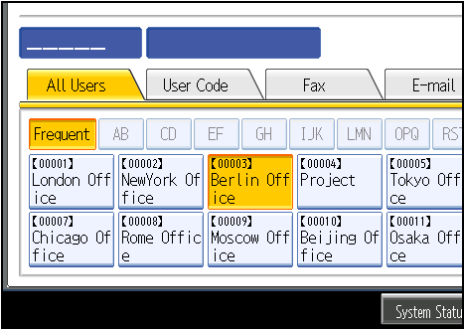


5. Press the name key to be moved.



You can select a name using the number keys.

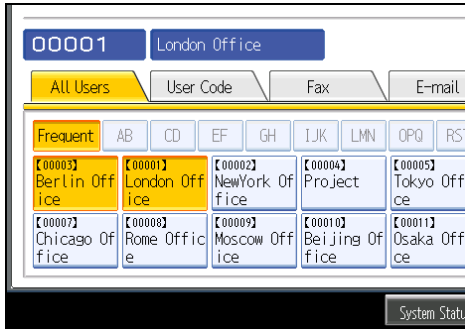
6. Press the name key in place you want to move it to.



The user key is moved to the selected position, and the user key currently at the selected position is moved forward or backward.

If you move the selected user key forward, the user key currently at the selected position is moved backward.

If you move the selected user key backward, the user key currently at the selected position is moved forward.



You can also select a name using the number keys.

Print Address Book: Destination List

You can print the destination list registered in the Address Book.

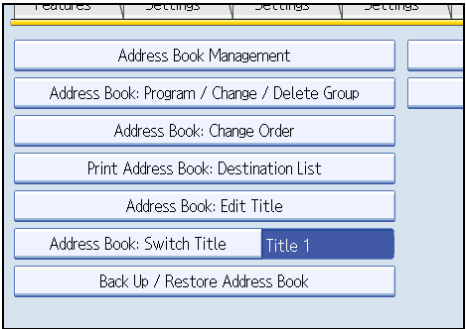
- Print in Title 1 Order
Prints the Address Book in Title 1 order.
- Print in Title 2 Order
Prints the Address Book in Title 2 order.
- Print in Title 3 Order
Prints the Address Book in Title 3 order.
- Print Group Dial List
Prints the group Address Book.
 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
 2. Press [System Settings].
 3. Press [Administrator Tools].
 4. Press [Print Address Book: Destination List].
 5. Select the print format.
 6. To print the list on two-sided pages, select [Print on 2 Sides].
 7. Press the [Start] key.

The list prints out.

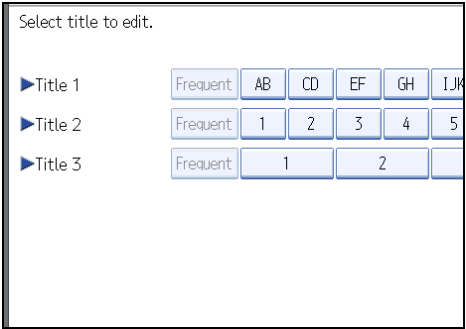
Address Book: Edit Title

You can edit the title to easily find a user.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book: Edit Title].



5. Press the title key you want to change.



- 6. Enter the new name, and then press [OK].
- 7. Press [OK].
- 8. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Address Book: Switch Title

Specifies the title to select a name.

The default setting is [Title 1].

Back Up / Restore Address Book

You can back up the machine's address book to external storage or restore the backup copy from the external storage.

Restore data overwrites Address Book data stored on the machine, and clears the counter of each registered user of the machine.

- Back Up
You can back up the machine's address book to external storage.
- Restore
You can restore the backup copy of the address book from external storage.
- Format
You can format the external storage.
- Obtain Media Info

The free space and occupied space of the external storage are displayed.

Display / Print Counter

Allows you to view and print the number of prints.

- Display / Print Counter

Displays the number of prints for each function (Total, Copier, Printer, A3/DLT, Duplex, Fax Prints, Send / TX Total, Fax Transmission, Scanner Send).

- Print Counter List

Prints out a list of the number of prints made under each function.

Display / Clear / Print Counter per User

Allows you to view and print the numbers of prints accessed with user codes, and to set those values to 0.

Press [**▲**Previous] and [**▼**Next] to show all the numbers of prints.

The number of prints may differ from the counter values shown in Display/Print Counter.

- Print Counter List for All Users

Prints the counter value for all the users.

- Clear Counter List for All Users

Resets the counter value for all the users.

- Print Counter List Per User

Prints the counter value for each user.

- Clear Counter List Per User

Resets the counter value for each user.

- Select All on the Page

Select all the users on the page.

User Authentication Management

- User Code Auth.

Using User Code Authentication, you can limit the available functions and supervise their use.

When using User Code Authentication, register the user code.

Using the Printer PC Control function, you can obtain a log of prints corresponding to the codes entered using the printer driver.

If User Code Authentication has been specified, Auto Color Select cannot be used.

For details about Basic Authentication, Windows Authentication, LDAP Authentication, and Integration Server Authentication, consult your administrator.

- Copier:

[Restrict All (B & W/Single Color/Two-Color/Full Color)], [Single Color / Two-color / Full Color], [Two-Color / Full Color], [Full Color], [Do not Restrict]

- Printer:
[Black & White / Color], [PC Control], [Do not Restrict]
- Other Functions:
[Document Server], [Facsimile], [Scanner]
- Printer Job Authentication:
[Entire], [Simple (Limitation)], [Simple (All)]
- Limitation Range:
[Change]
- Basic Auth.
- Windows Auth.
- LDAP Auth.
- Integration Svr. Auth.
- Off

The default setting is [Off].

Administrator Authentication Management

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Program / Change Administrator

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Key Counter Management

Specify the functions you want to manage with the key counter.

- Copier: [Full Color], [Black & White], [Single Color], [Two-Color]
- Printer: [Color], [Black & White]
- Other Functions: [Document Server], [Facsimile], [Scanner]

External Charge Unit Management

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Enhanced External Charge Unit Management

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Extended Security

Specify whether or not to use the extended security functions. For details about the extended security functions, consult your administrator.

Auto Delete File in Document Server

Specify whether documents stored in the Document Server will or will not be deleted after a specified period of time.

The default setting is [On], "3" day (s).

If you select [On], documents stored subsequently are deleted after the specified period.

If you select [Off], documents are not automatically deleted.

If you select [On], enter a number of days from 1 to 180 (in 1 day increments).

The default is 3 days, this means documents are deleted 3 days (72 hours) after they are stored.

Delete All Files in Document Server

You can delete files stored in the Document Server, including files stored for Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print under the printer function.

Even if a password is always set, all documents are deleted.

A confirmation message appears. To delete all documents, select [Yes].

Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server

Program the LDAP server to find up e-mail destinations in the LDAP server Address Book directly. This function is possible when sending scan files by e-mail using the scanner or fax function.

- Name
- Server Name
- Search Base
- Port Number
- Use Secure Connection (SSL)
- Authentication
- User name
- Password
- Realm name
- Search Conditions
- Search Options

To start an LDAP search, make sure that the items listed below are set. For other items, check your environment and make any necessary changes.

This function supports LDAP Version 2.0 and 3.0.

To use the LDAP server, select [On] under LDAP Search.

For details about how to program the LDAP Server, see "Programming the LDAP server".

LDAP Search

Specify whether or not to use the LDAP server for searching.

The default setting is [Off].

If you select [Off], LDAP server list will not appear on the searching display.

Program / Change / Delete Realm

Program the realm to be used for Kerberos authentication.

- Realm Name
- KDC Server Name
- Domain Name

Be sure to set both the realm name and KDC server name when programming a realm.

For details about Program/Change/Delete Realm, see "Programming the Realm".

AOF (Always On)

Specify whether or not to use Auto Off.

The default setting is [On].

Energy Saver Level

Specify the level for Energy Saver mode.

If you specify [Level 1], the machine switches from Energy Saver mode to Normal mode and is ready to begin copying in about three seconds.

If you specify [Level 2], the machine switches from Energy Saver mode to Normal mode and is ready to begin copying in about ten seconds. When set to [Level 2], the machine consumes less power when it is set to [Level 1].

The default setting is [Level 1].

Service Mode Lock

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Firmware Version

You can check the version of the software installed in this machine.

Network Security Level

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Auto Erase Memory Setting

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Erase All Memory

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Delete All Logs

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Transfer Log Setting

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Data Security for Copying

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Fixed USB Port

Specify whether or not to fix the USB port.

The default setting is [Off].

If a PC with the printer driver installed is connected to another device of the same model through the USB interface, selecting [On] for this option eliminates the need for additional installation of the driver to the PC.

Machine Data Encryption Settings

For details about this function, consult your administrator.

Reference

- p.17 "Accessing User Tools"
- p.55 "Programming the LDAP server"
- p.61 "Programming the Realm"

Programming the LDAP server

This section describes how to specify the LDAP server settings.

This function supports LDAP version 2.0 and 3.0.

Program the LDAP server to find e-mail destinations in the LDAP server Address Book directly.

This function is possible when sending scan files by e-mail using the scanner or fax function.

To start an LDAP search, make sure that the items listed below are set. For other items, check your environment and make any necessary changes.

- Server Name
- Search Base
- Port Number
- Authentication
- Search Conditions

If [Kerberos Authentication] is selected be sure to set the "User Name", "Password", and the "Realm Name".

If [Digest Authentication] or [Cleartext Authentication] is selected be sure to set the "User Name" and "Password".

To use the LDAP server in Administrator Tools, select [On] under "LDAP Search".

The LDAP version 2.0 does not support Digest Authentication.

To select Kerberos Authentication, a realm must be registered in advance.

Programming the LDAP server

This section describes how to program the LDAP server.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [▼Next] twice.
5. Press [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server].
6. Check that [Program/Change] is selected.
7. Select the LDAP server you want to program or change.

When programming the server, select [*Not Programmed].

8. Press [Change] under "Name".
9. Enter the name, and then press [OK].
10. Press [Change] under "Server Name".

11. Enter the server name, and then press [OK].**12. Press [Change] under "Search Base".**

Select the root folder to start the search from e-mail addresses registered in the selected folder Which is search targets.

13. Enter the search base, and then press [OK].

For example, if the search target is the sales department of ABC company, enter "dc=sales department, o=ABC". (In this example, the description is for an active directory. "dc" is for the organization unit, and "o" is for the company.)

Search base registration may be required depending on your server environment. When registration is required, unspecified searches will result in error.

Check your server environment and enter any required specifications.

14. Press [Change] under "Port Number".

Specify the port number for communicating with the LDAP server. Specify a port that is compliant with your environment.

15. Enter the port number using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

When SSL is set to [On], the port number automatically changes to "636".

16. Under "Use Secure Connection (SSL)", press [On].

Use SSL to communicate with the LDAP server.

For SSL to function, the LDAP server must support SSL.

If you set SSL to [On], the port number automatically changes to "636".

If you do not enable SSL, security problems may occur. To enable SSL, you must use the machine's settings. For details, consult your network administrator.

17. Press [▼Next].**18. Select the authentication method.**

To make a search request to the LDAP server, use the administrator account for authentication.

Authentication settings must comply with your server's authentication settings. Check your server settings before setting this machine.

[Digest Authentication] is available only with LDAP Version3.0.

If you select [Cleartext Authentication], a password is sent to the LDAP server as is, without any encryption processing.

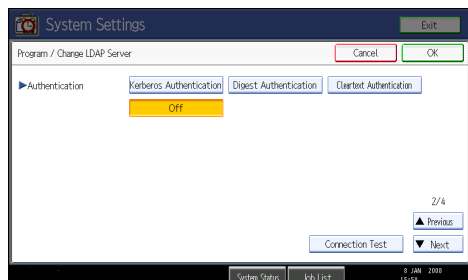
If you select [Digest Authentication], a password is sent using an encryption process that prevents passwords from being revealed during transmission to the LDAP server.

If you select [Kerberos Authentication], a password is sent using an encryption process that prevents passwords from being revealed during transmission to the KDC server where authentication occurs.

If you select [Off], proceed to step 24.

If you select [Digest Authentication] or [Cleartext Authentication], proceed to step 19 to 22, and then proceed to step 24.

If you select [Kerberos Authentication], proceed to step 19 to 23, and then proceed to step 24.



19. Press [Change] under "User Name".

When [Kerberos Authentication], [Digest Authentication], or [Cleartext Authentication] is selected for the authentication setting, use the administrator account name and password. Do not enter the administrator account name and password when using authentication for each individual or each search.

20. Enter the user name, and then press [OK].

Procedures for the user name setting differ depending on server environment. Check your server environment before making the setting.

Example: Domain Name\User Name, User Name@Domain Name, CN=Name, OU=Department Name, DC=Server Name

21. Press [Change] under "Password".

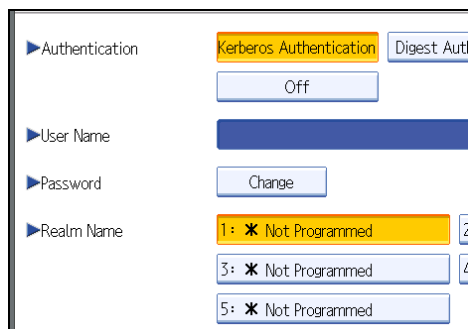
22. Enter the password, and then press [OK].

The user name and password are required for administrator authentication to access the LDAP server.

You can connect to the LDAP server using a user name and password stored in the Address Book. For details, see "Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication".

If you select [Digest Authentication] or [Cleartext Authentication], proceed to step 24.

23. Select the Realm.



24. Press [Connection Test].

Access the LDAP server to check that the proper connection is established. Check authentication works according to the authentication settings.

25. Press [Exit].

If the connection test fails, check your settings and try again.

This function does not check search conditions or the search base.

26. Press [▼Next].**27. Press [Change] for items you want to use as search conditions from the following: "Name", "E-mail Address", "Fax Number", "Company Name", and "Department Name".**

You can enter an attribute as a typical search keyword. Using the entered attribute, the function searches the LDAP server's Address Book.

28. Enter the attribute you want to use when searching for e-mail addresses, and then press [OK].

The attribute value may change depending on the server environment. Check that the attribute value complies with your server environment before setting it.

You can leave items blank, but you cannot leave attributes blank when searching for e-mail addresses from the LDAP server Address Book.

29. Press [▼Next].**30. Press [Change] under "Attribute".****31. Enter the attribute you want to use when searching for e-mail addresses, and then press [OK].**

The attribute value may change depending on the server environment. Check that the attribute complies with your server environment before setting it.

32. Press [Change] under "Key Display".**33. Enter the key display, and then press [OK].**

The registered "Key Display" appears as a keyword for searching LDAP.

- Without key display registration

Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Fax Destination	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
E-mail Address	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Company Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Department Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match

- With key display registration

Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Fax Destination	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
E-mail Address	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Company Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
Department Name	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match
EmployeeNo.	Beginning Word	End Word	Exact Match

The key does not appear on the search screen unless both "Attribute" and "Key Display" are registered. Make sure you register both to use the optional search.

34. Press [OK].

35. Press [Exit].

36. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Reference

- p.303 "Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication"

Changing the LDAP server

This section describes how to change the programmed LDAP server.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [▼Next] twice.
5. Press [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server].
6. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
7. Select the LDAP server you want to change.
8. Change the settings as necessary.
9. Press [OK] after changing each item.
10. Press [Exit].
11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Deleting the LDAP server

This section describes how to delete the programmed LDAP server.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [▼Next] twice.
5. Press [Program / Change / Delete LDAP Server].
6. Press [Delete].
7. Select the LDAP server you want to delete.
8. Press [Yes].
9. Press [Exit].
10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Programming the Realm

This section describes how to specify the Realm settings.

Program the realm to be used for Kerberos authentication.

A realm is the network area in which Kerberos authentication is used. After confirming the network environment, specify the necessary items.

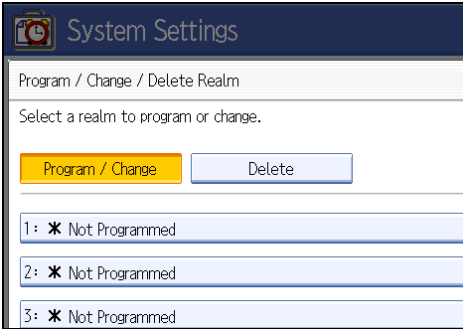
You can register up to 5 realms.

1

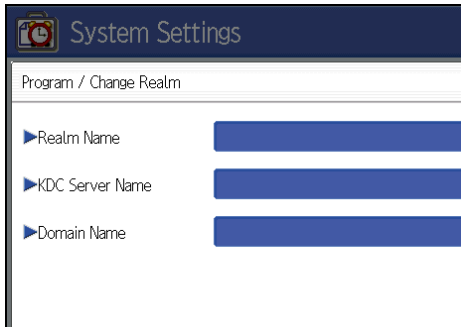
Programming the Realm

This section describes how to program the Realm.

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].
- 3. Press [Administrator Tools].
- 4. Press [▼Next] twice.
- 5. Press the [Program / Change / Delete Realm].
- 6. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.



- 7. Press [*Not Programmed].

8. Press [Change] under "Realm Name".**9. Enter the realm name, and then press [OK].**

Enter the realm name, or host name.

You can enter a realm name using up to 64 characters.

10. Press [Change] under "KDC Server Name".**11. Enter the KDC server name, and then press [OK].**

Enter the KDC server name, host name, or IPv4 address.

You can enter a KDC server name using up to 64 characters.

12. Press [Change] under "Domain Name".**13. Enter the domain name, and then press [OK].**

Enter the domain name, or host name.

You can enter a domain name using up to 64 characters.

14. Press [OK].**15. Press [Exit].****16. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

Changing the Realm

This section describes how to change the programmed Realm.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [▼Next] twice.
5. Press [Program / Change / Delete Realm].
6. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
7. Select the Realm you want to change.

8. To change the realm name, press [Change] under “Realm Name”.

9. Enter the realm name, and then press [OK].

You can enter a realm name using up to 64 characters.

10. To change the KDC server name, press [Change] under “KDC Server Name”.

11. Enter the KDC server name, and then press [OK].

You can enter a KDC server name using up to 64 characters.

12. To change the domain name, press [Change] under “Domain Name”.

13. Enter the domain name, and then press [OK].

You can enter a domain name using up to 64 characters.

14. Press [OK].

15. Press [Exit].

16. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Deleting the Realm

This section describes how to delete the programmed Realm.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].

3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [▼Next] twice.

5. Press [Program / Change / Delete Realm].

6. Press [Delete].

7. Select the realm you want to delete.

8. Press [Yes].

9. Press [Exit].

10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Connecting the Machine

This chapter describes how to connect the machine to the network and specify the network settings.

Connecting to the Interfaces

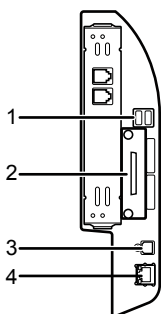
This section explains how to identify the machine's interface and connect the machine according to the network environment.

2

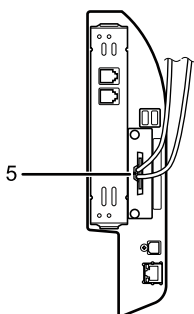
CAUTION

- A network interface cable with a ferrite core must be used for RF interference suppression.

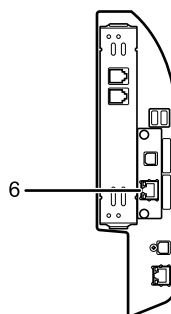
When the IEEE1284 interface board(optional) is installed.



When the wireless LAN board (optional) is installed.



When the Gigabit Ethernet interface board (optional) is installed.



BKT003S

1. USB Host Interface

Port for connecting the USB cable. Use this to connect a digital camera or similar device to the machine.

2. IEEE 1284 port (optional)

Port for connecting the IEEE 1284 interface cable.

3. USB 2.0 port

Port for connecting the USB2.0 interface cable.

4. 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX port

Port for connecting the 100BASE-TX or 10BASE-T cable.

5. Wireless LAN port (optional)

Port for using the wireless LAN

6. Gigabit Ethernet port (optional)

Port for using the 1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, or 10BASE-T cable

Note

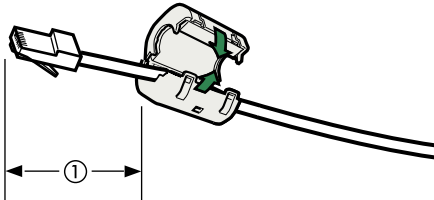
- You cannot install these two options at the same time: IEEE 1284 interface board, wireless LAN board.

Connecting to the Ethernet Interface

This section describes how to connect Ethernet interface cable to the Ethernet interface.

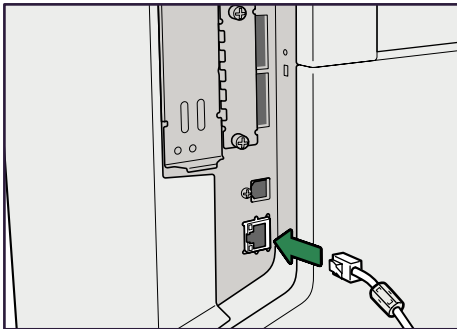
★ Important

- If the main power switch is on, turn it off.
 - Use the following Ethernet cables.
 - Unshielded Twisted Pair Cable (UTP) or Shielded Twisted Pair Cable (STP) and Category type 5 or more
1. A ferrite core for the Ethernet interface cable is supplied with this machine. Attach the ferrite core about 10 cm (4 inch) (1) from the machine end of the cable.



BKT031S

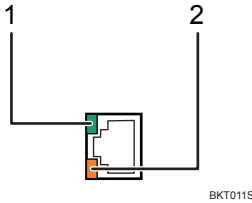
2. Make sure the main power switch of the machine is off.
3. Connect the Ethernet interface cable to the 10BASE-T/100BASE-TX port.



BKT002S

4. Connect the other end of the Ethernet interface cable to a network connection device such as a hub.

5. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.



1. Indicator (green)

Lights up green when the machine is connected correctly to the network.

2. Indicator (yellow)

Lights up yellow when 100 BASE-TX is in operation. Goes off when 10 BASE-T is in operation.

↓ Note

- For details about how to turn on the main power switch, see "Turning On the Main Power", About This Machine.
- For details about installing the printer driver, see "Preparing the Machine", Printer Reference.

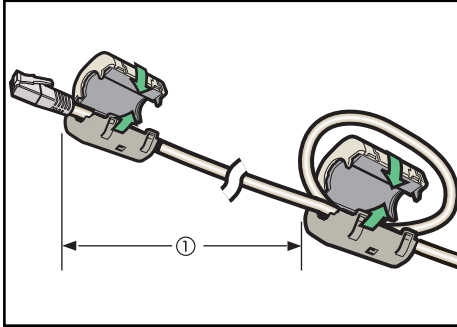
Connecting to the Gigabit Ethernet Interface

This section describes how to connect the Ethernet interface cable to the Gigabit Ethernet port.

★ Important

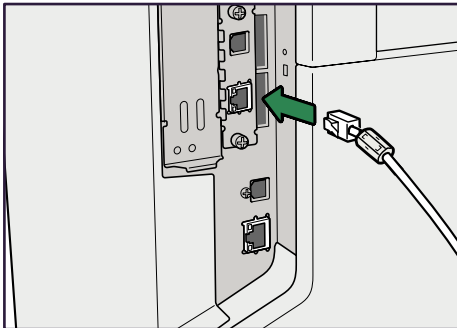
- If the main power switch is on, turn it off.
- Use the following Ethernet cables.
 - When using 100BASE-TX/10BASE-T:
Unshielded Twisted Pair Cable (UTP) or Shielded Twisted Pair Cable (STP) and Category type 5 or more
 - When using 1000BASE-T:
Unshielded Twisted Pair Cable (UTP) or Shielded Twisted Pair Cable (STP) and Category type 5e or more

1. Attach one ferrite core at the machine end of the Ethernet cable, and then attach the other ferrite core about 10 cm (4 inch) (1) from this core.



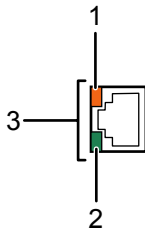
BFL358S

2. Make sure the main power switch of the machine is off.
3. Connect the Ethernet interface cable to the Gigabit Ethernet port.



BKT201S

4. Connect the other end of the Ethernet interface cable to a network connection device such as a hub.
5. Turn on the main power switch of the machine.



BUD001S

1. Indicator (yellow)

When 100BASE-TX is operating, the LED is lit yellow. When 10BASE-T is operating, it is turned off.

2. Indicator (green)

When 10BASE-T is operating, the LED is lit green. When 100BASE-TX is operating, it is turned off.

3. Indicators (both green and yellow)

When 1000BASE-T is operating, both LED are lit.

↓ Note

- For details about how to turn on the main power switch, see "Turning On the Main Power", About This Machine.
- For details about installing the printer driver, see "Preparing the Machine", Printer Reference.

2

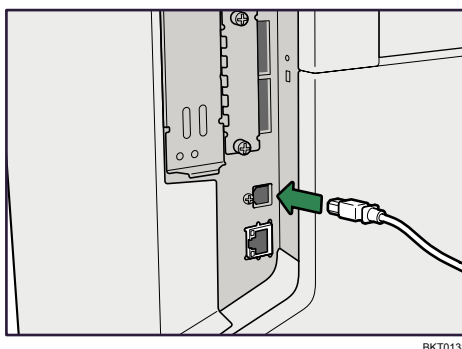
Connecting to the USB Interface

This section describes how to connect the USB2.0 interface cable to the USB2.0 port.

⚠ CAUTION

- Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used for connections to a host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet emission limits.

1. Connect the USB2.0 interface cable to the USB2.0 port.



BKT013S

2. Connect the other end to the USB2.0 port on the host computer.

↓ Note

- This machine does not come with a USB interface cable. Make sure you purchase the appropriate cable for the machine and your computer.
- The USB2.0 interface board is supported by Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher.
 - For Mac OS:
To use Macintosh, the machine must be equipped with the optional PostScript 3 unit. When used with Mac OS X 10.3.3 or higher, a transfer speed of USB2.0 is supported.
- For details about installing the printer driver, see "Preparing the Machine", Printer Reference.

Connecting to the IEEE 1284 Interface

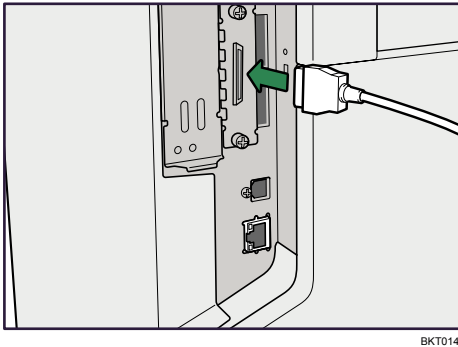
This section describes how to connect the IEEE 1284 interface cable to the IEEE 1284 interface board.

CAUTION

- Properly shielded and grounded cables and connectors must be used for connections to a host computer (and/or peripheral) in order to meet emission limits.

2

1. **Make sure the main power switch on the machine is off.**
2. **Turn off the main power switch of the host computer.**
3. **Connect the IEEE 1284 interface cable to the IEEE 1284 port.**



You might have to use a conversion adapter to connect the cable to the interface. For details about acquiring a conversion adapter, consult your sales or service representative.

4. **Connect the other end of the cable into the interface connector on the host computer.**
Check the shape of the connector to the computer. Connect the cable firmly.
5. **Turn on the main power switch of the machine.**
6. **Turn on the host computer.**

When using Windows 2000/XP/Vista and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, a printer driver installation screen might appear when the computer is turned on. If this happens, click [Cancel] on the screen.

Note

- For details about how to turn on the main power switch, see "Turning On the Main Power", About This Machine.
- For details about installing the printer driver, see "Preparing the Machine", Printer Reference.

Connecting to the Wireless LAN Interface

This section describes how to connect to the wireless LAN interface.

↓ Note

- Check the machine's IPv4 address and subnet mask, or the IPv6 address settings.
- For details about how to set the IPv4 address and subnet mask from the control panel of the machine, see "Interface Settings".
- Before using this machine with a wireless LAN interface, you must select [Wireless LAN] in [LAN Type].

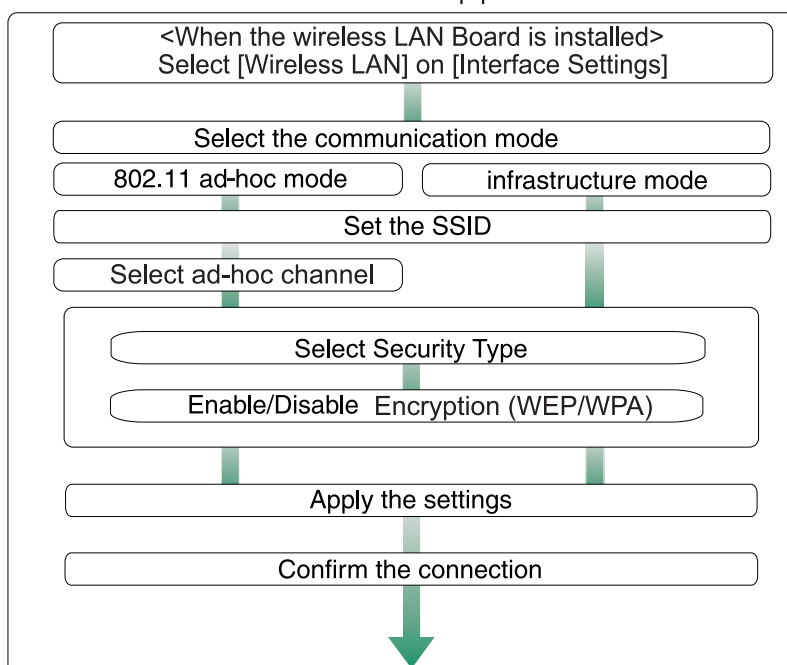
2

Setup Procedure

This section describes how to setup wireless LAN interface.

Set up wireless LAN according to the following procedure:

■ Wireless LAN setup procedure



BBM002S

↓ Note

- Select [802.11 Ad-hoc Mode] when connecting Windows XP as a wireless LAN client using Windows XP standard driver or utilities, or when not using the infrastructure mode.
- When [802.11 Ad-hoc Mode] is selected in Communication mode, select the channel for [Ad-hoc Channel]. Set a channel that matches the type of wireless LAN being used. For details about setting the Ad-hoc Channel, see "Interface Settings".
- You can specify either "WEP" or "WPA" to the Security Method.
- Specify "WPA", when [Communication Mode] is set to [Infrastructure Mode].

- If you select the [WPA] option for Security Method, select one of the following: [WPA-PSK], [WPA], [WPA2-PSK], or [WPA2]. If you select [WPA-PSK] or [WPA2-PSK], enter your PSK. If you select [WPA] or [WPA2], authentication settings and certificate installation settings are required. For details about setting methods, see "Configuring IEEE 802.1X".
- For details about how to specify wireless LAN settings from the control panel on the machine, see "Interface Settings".

2

Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"
- p.327 "Configuring IEEE 802.1X"

Checking the Signal

This section describes how to check the machine's radio wave status.

When using in infrastructure mode, you can check the machine's radio wave status using the control panel.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].
3. Press [Interface Settings].
4. Press [Wireless LAN].
5. Press [Wireless LAN Signal].

The machine's radio wave status appears.

6. After checking radio wave status, press [Exit].
7. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Network Settings Required to Use the Printer/ LAN-Fax

This section lists the network settings required for using the printer or LAN-Fax function.

★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

2

Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for using the printer or LAN-Fax function with an Ethernet connection. For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	NCP Delivery Protocol	As required
Interface Settings/Network	NW Frame Type	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Computer Name	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Work Group	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine Name	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [LAN Type] is displayed when the wireless LAN board is installed. If Ethernet and wireless LAN are both connected, the selected interface has priority.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

Wireless LAN

This section lists the settings required for using the printer or LAN-Fax function with a wireless LAN connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	NCP Delivery Protocol	As required
Interface Settings/Network	NW Frame Type	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Computer Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Work Group	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine Name	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Communication Mode	Necessary
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Ad-hoc Channel	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	SSID Setting	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Security Method	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [Wireless LAN] and [LAN Type] are displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

Network Settings Required to Use Internet Fax

This section lists the network settings required for using Internet Fax.

★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for using Internet Fax with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
File Transfer	SMTP Server	Necessary
File Transfer	SMTP Authentication	As required
File Transfer	POP before SMTP	As required
File Transfer	Reception Protocol	As required
File Transfer	POP3 / IMAP4 Settings	As required
File Transfer	Administrator's E-mail Address	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Communication Port	Necessary
File Transfer	E-mail Reception Interval	As required
File Transfer	Max. Reception E-mail Size	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Storage in Server	As required
File Transfer	Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message	As required
File Transfer	Fax E-mail Account	Necessary

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [LAN Type] is displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.
- SMTP Server and Fax E-mail Account must be specified in order to send Internet Fax.
- When POP before SMTP is set to [On], also make settings for Reception Protocol and POP3 / IMAP4 Settings.
- When SMTP Authentication is set to [On], also make setting for Administrator's E-mail Address.
- POP3 / IMAP4 Settings, E-mail Communication Port, and Fax E-mail Account must be specified in order to receive Internet Fax.
- When setting POP before SMTP to [On], check POP3 port number in E-mail Communication Port.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

- p.38 "File Transfer"

Wireless LAN

This section lists the settings required for using Internet Fax with a wireless LAN connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

2

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Communication Mode	Necessary
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	SSID Setting	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Ad-hoc Channel	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Security Method	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
File Transfer	SMTP Server	Necessary
File Transfer	SMTP Authentication	As required
File Transfer	POP before SMTP	As required
File Transfer	Reception Protocol	As required
File Transfer	POP3 / IMAP4 Settings	As required
File Transfer	Administrator's E-mail Address	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Communication Port	Necessary
File Transfer	E-mail Reception Interval	As required
File Transfer	Max. Reception E-mail Size	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Storage in Server	As required
File Transfer	Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message	As required
File Transfer	Fax E-mail Account	Necessary

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [Wireless LAN] and [LAN Type] are displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.
- SMTP Server and Fax E-mail Account must be specified in order to send Internet Fax.
- When POP before SMTP is set to [On], you must also make settings for Reception Protocol and POP3 / IMAP4 Settings.
- When SMTP Authentication is set to [On], you must also make settings for Administrator's E-mail Address.
- POP3 / IMAP4 Settings, E-mail Communication Port, and Fax E-mail Account must be specified in order to receive Internet Fax.
- When setting POP before SMTP to [On], check POP3 port number in E-mail Communication Port.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"
- p.38 "File Transfer"

Network Settings Required to Use E-mail Function

This section lists the network settings required for sending e-mail.

★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for sending e-mail with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
File Transfer	SMTP Server	Necessary
File Transfer	SMTP Authentication	As required
File Transfer	POP before SMTP	As required
File Transfer	Reception Protocol	As required
File Transfer	POP3 / IMAP4 Settings	As required
File Transfer	Administrator's E-mail Address	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Communication Port	As required
File Transfer	Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message	As required
File Transfer	Scanner Resend Interval Time	As required
File Transfer	Number of Scanner Resends	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [LAN Type] is displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.
- When POP before SMTP is set to [On], also make settings for Reception Protocol and POP3 / IMAP4 Settings.
- When setting POP before SMTP to [On], check POP3 port number in E-mail Communication Port.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"
- p.38 "File Transfer"

Wireless LAN

This section lists the settings required for sending e-mail with an Wireless LAN connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Communication Mode	Necessary
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	SSID Setting	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Ad-hoc Channel	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Security Method	As required
File Transfer	SMTP Server	Necessary
File Transfer	SMTP Authentication	As required
File Transfer	POP before SMTP	As required
File Transfer	Reception Protocol	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
File Transfer	POP3 / IMAP4 Settings	As required
File Transfer	Administrator's E-mail Address	As required
File Transfer	E-mail Communication Port	As required
File Transfer	Program / Change / Delete E-mail Message	As required
File Transfer	Scanner Resend Interval Time	As required
File Transfer	Number of Scanner Resends	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [LAN Type] is displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.
- When POP before SMTP is set to [On], you must also make settings for Reception Protocol and POP3 / IMAP4 Settings.
- When setting POP before SMTP to [On], check POP3 port number in E-mail Communication Port.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"
- p.38 "File Transfer"

Network Settings Required to Use Scan to Folder Function

This section lists the network settings required for sending files.

★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for sending files with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
File Transfer	Default User Name / Password (Send)	As required
File Transfer	Scanner Resend Interval Time	As required
File Transfer	Number of Scanner Resends	As required

**Note**

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [LAN Type] is displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

**Reference**

- p.30 "Interface Settings"
- p.38 "File Transfer"

Wireless LAN

This section lists the settings required for sending files with an Wireless LAN connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Communication Mode	Necessary
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	SSID Setting	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Ad-hoc Channel	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Security Method	As required
File Transfer	Default User Name / Password (Send)	As required
File Transfer	Scanner Resend Interval Time	As required
File Transfer	Number of Scanner Resends	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [Wireless LAN] and [LAN Type] are displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"
- p.38 "File Transfer"

Network Settings Required to Use the Network Delivery Scanner

This section lists the network settings required for delivering data to the network.

★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

2

Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for delivering data to the network with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
File Transfer	Delivery Option	Necessary
File Transfer	Fax RX File Transmission	As required
File Transfer	Scanner Resend Interval Time	As required
File Transfer	Number of Scanner Resends	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [Wireless LAN] and [LAN Type] are displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.
- If Delivery Option is set to [On], check that IPv4 Address is specified.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"
- p.38 "File Transfer"

Wireless LAN

This section lists the settings required for delivering data to the network with an wireless LAN connection. For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings" and "File Transfer".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Communication Mode	Necessary
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	SSID Setting	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Ad-hoc Channel	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Security Method	As required
File Transfer	Delivery Option	Necessary
File Transfer	Fax RX File Transmission	As required
File Transfer	Scanner Resend Interval Time	As required
File Transfer	Number of Scanner Resends	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [Wireless LAN] and [LAN Type] are displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed.
When both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.
- If Delivery Option is set to [On], check that IPv4 Address is specified.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"
- p.38 "File Transfer"

Network Settings Required to Use WSD Scanner

This section lists the network settings required for using WSD Scanner function.

★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

Ethernet

This section lists the settings required for using WSD Scanner function with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	NCP Delivery Protocol	As required
Interface Settings/Network	NW Frame Type	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Computer Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Work Group	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine Name	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [LAN Type] is displayed when the wireless LAN board is installed. If Ethernet and wireless LAN are both connected, the selected interface has priority.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

Wireless LAN

This section lists the settings required for using WSD Scanner function with a wireless LAN connection. For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	NCP Delivery Protocol	As required
Interface Settings/Network	NW Frame Type	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Computer Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	SMB Work Group	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine Name	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Communication Mode	Necessary
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Ad-hoc Channel	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	SSID Setting	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Security Method	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [Wireless LAN] and [LAN Type] are displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed. If both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

Network Settings Required to Use Network TWAIN Scanner

This section lists the network settings required to use the TWAIN Scanner under the network environment.

★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

2

Ethernet

This section lists the settings required to use the network TWAIN Scanner with an Ethernet connection.

For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required

Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [LAN Type] is displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed.
- When both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

2**Wireless LAN**

This section lists the settings required for using the network TWAIN Scanner a wireless LAN connection. For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Communication Mode	Necessary
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	SSID Setting	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Ad-hoc Channel	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Security Method	As required

Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [Wireless LAN] and [LAN Type] are displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed.
When both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

Network Settings Required to Use Document Server

This section lists the settings required to use the Document Server function under the network environment.

★ Important

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.

Ethernet

This section lists the settings required to use the Document Server function with an Ethernet connection. For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Ethernet Speed	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet	As required
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [LAN Type] is displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed.
- When both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

Wireless LAN

This section lists the settings required for using the Document Server function with a wireless LAN connection. For details about how to specify the settings, see "Interface Settings".

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv4 Address	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	IPv4 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Machine IPv6 Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Gateway Address	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	DDNS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	IPsec	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Domain Name	As required
Interface Settings/Network	WINS Configuration	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Effective Protocol	Necessary

Menu	User Tool	Setting Requirements
Interface Settings/Network	LAN Type	Necessary
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SNMPv3 Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Permit SSL / TLS Communication	As required
Interface Settings/Network	Host Name	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Communication Mode	Necessary
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	SSID Setting	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Ad-hoc Channel	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Security Method	As required
Interface Settings/Wireless LAN	Transmission Speed	As required

↓ Note

- For the Effective Protocol setting, check that the protocol you want to use is set to [Active].
- [Wireless LAN] and [LAN Type] are displayed when the wireless LAN interface board is installed.
When both Ethernet and wireless LAN are connected, the selected interface takes precedence.

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

Using Utilities to Make Network Settings

This section describes how to make network settings using utilities.

You can also specify network settings using utilities such as Web Image Monitor, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, and telnet.

↓ Note

- These settings should be made by the system administrator, or with the advice of the system administrator.
- For details about using Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin".
- For details about using telnet, see "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

📖 Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"
- p.137 "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin"
- p.162 "Remote Maintenance by telnet"

Interface Settings

This section describes how to make Interface settings using utilities.

Change settings by using Web Image Monitor, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, and telnet.

[Network] → [Machine IPv4 Address] → [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Machine IPv4 Address] → [Specify] → "IPv4 Address"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Machine IPv4 Address] → [Specify] → "Subnet Mask"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [IPv4 Gateway Address]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.

- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Machine IPv6 Address] → "Manual Configuration Address"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [IPv6 Gateway Address]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [IPv6 Stateless Address Autoconfiguration]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [DNS Configuration] → [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [DNS Configuration] → [Specify] → "DNS Server 1-3"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [DDNS Configuration]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [IPsec]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Domain Name] → [Auto-Obtain (DHCP)]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Domain Name] → [Specify] → "Domain Name"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [WINS Configuration] → [On] → "Primary WINS Server"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [WINS Configuration] → [On] → "Secondary WINS Server"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [WINS Configuration] → [On] → "Scope ID"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [WINS Configuration] → [Off]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "IPv4"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: You can specify the TCP/IP settings if SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is communicating with the machine using IPX/SPX.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "IPv6"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "NetWare"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: You can specify the IPX/SPX settings if SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin is communicating with the machine using TCP/IP.

- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "SMB"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Effective Protocol] → "AppleTalk"

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NCP Delivery Protocol] → [IPX Priority]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NCP Delivery Protocol] → [TCP / IP Priority]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NCP Delivery Protocol] → [IPX Only]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NCP Delivery Protocol] → [TCP / IP Only]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Auto Select]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Ethernet II]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Ethernet 802.2]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Ethernet 802.3]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [NW Frame Type] → [Ethernet SNAP]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [SMB Computer Name]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [SMB Work Group]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Ethernet Speed]

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [IEEE 802.1X Authentication for Ethernet]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [LAN Type] → [Ethernet]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [LAN Type] → [Wireless LAN]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Ping Command]

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Permit SNMPv3 Communication] → [Encryption Only]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Permit SNMPv3 Communication] → [Encryption / Cleartext]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Permit SSL / TLS Communication] → [Ciphertext Only]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Permit SSL / TLS Communication] → [Ciphertext Priority]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Permit SSL / TLS Communication] → [Ciphertext/Cleartext]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Host Name]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Network] → [Machine Name]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Wireless LAN] → [Communication Mode] → [802.11 Ad-hoc Mode]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Wireless LAN] → [Communication Mode] → [Infrastructure Mode]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Wireless LAN] → [SSID Setting]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Wireless LAN] → [Ad-hoc Channel]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

[Wireless LAN] → [Security Method]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Can be used for specifying the setting.

File Transfer

This section describes how to make File Transfer settings using utilities.

Change settings by using Web Image Monitor, SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, and telnet.

[File Transfer] → [SMTP Server]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [SMTP Authentication]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [POP before SMTP]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Reception Protocol] → [POP3]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Reception Protocol] → [IMAP4]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Reception Protocol] → [SMTP]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [POP3 / IMAP4 Settings]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Administrator's E-mail Address]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [E-mail Communication Port]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [E-mail Reception Interval]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Max. Reception E-mail Size]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [E-mail Storage in Server]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Default User Name / Password (Send)]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Fax E-mail Account]

- Web Image Monitor: Can be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Scanner Resend Interval Time]

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

[File Transfer] → [Number of Scanner Resends]

- Web Image Monitor: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.
- telnet: Cannot be used for specifying the setting.

Connecting the Machine to a Telephone Line and Telephone

This section describes how to connect the machine to the telephone lines and select the line type.

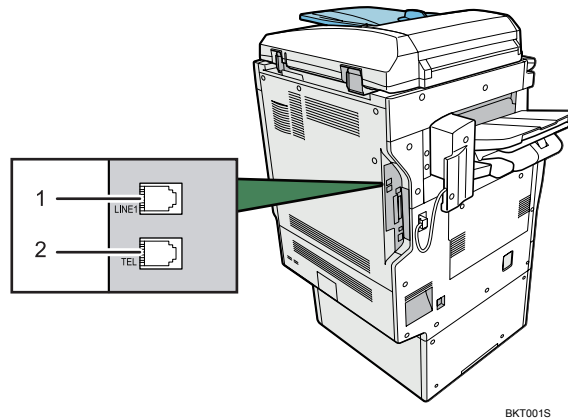
2

Connecting the Telephone Line

To connect the machine to a telephone line, use a snap-in modular connector.

★ Important

- Make sure the connector is the correct type before you start.



1. G3 interface unit connector
2. External telephone connector

Selecting the Line Type

Select the line type to which the machine is connected. There are two types: tone and pulse dial.

Select the line type using Administrator Tools.

↓ Note

- This function is not available in some regions.

Connecting the Optional Handset or an External Telephone

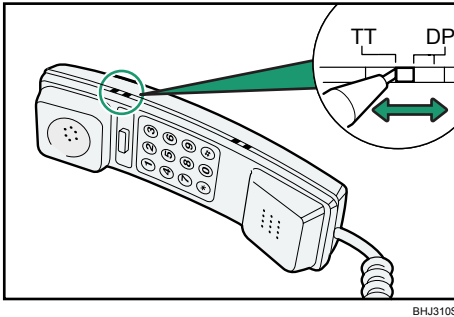
You can connect the optional handset or an external telephone to the machine.

You can use it for telephone calls.

★ Important

- When you use the optional handset or an external telephone with the [On Hook Dial] key for telephone calls, you can not talk with the other party without pressing the [On Hook Dial] key after talking off the receiver.

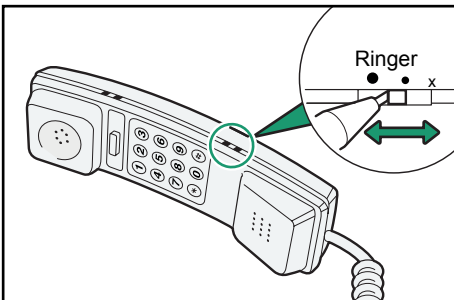
Specifying the handset line type



BHJ310S

The switch on the handset should be in the appropriate position-TT (Tone Dialing) or DP (Pulse Dialing).

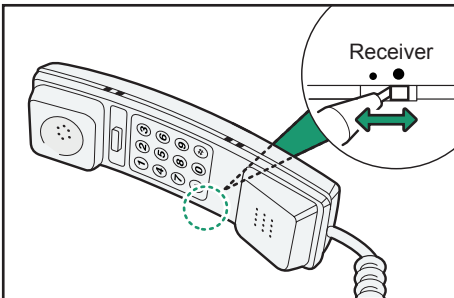
Adjusting the handset bell volume



BHJ311S

Adjust the handset ringer volume using the volume switch.

Adjusting the handset receiver volume



BKR030S

Adjusting the handset receiver volume using the volume switch.

Note

- Some external telephones may not be connected or may suffer reduced functionality.

3. Using a Printer Server

This chapter describes how to configure the machine as a network to printer.

Preparing Printer Server

This section explains how to configure the machine as a Windows network printer. The machine is configured to enabling network clients to use it. When the network printer is connected via SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, you can set the printing notification function to notify clients of the results of their print jobs.

★ Important

- Under Windows XP Professional or Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, to change printer properties in the [Printer] or [Printers and Faxes] window, you need Printer Management access authentication; under Windows Vista, and Windows Server 2008, Full Control access authentication. Log on to the file server as a member of the Administrators group.

1. Open the [Printers and Faxes] window from the [Start] menu.

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

2. Click the icon of the machine you want to use. On the [File] menu, click [Properties]. The printer properties appear.

3. On the [Sharing] tab, click [Share this printer].

4. To share the machine with users using a different version of Windows, click [Additional Drivers...].

If you have installed an alternative driver by selecting [Share As:] during the printer driver installation, this step can be ignored.

5. Click [OK], and then close the printer properties.

Using NetWare

This section describes the setting procedure for network printers in the NetWare environment. In the NetWare environment, you can connect the machine as a "print server" or "remote printer".

A "print server" is a network-shared computer with a printer connected to it. It accepts print jobs from other computers on the network, and prints those jobs in order of arrival.

A "remote printer" is a shared printer on a LAN or similar network. It is used by multiple users to process print jobs.

3

★ Important

- IPv6 cannot be used on this function.
- IPX/SPX (NetWare) cannot be used under Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008.
- NetWare is disabled by default. To enable NetWare, change the "NetWare" settings in Web Image Monitor, or use the "set" command in telnet. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help, or "Remote Maintenance by Telnet".

Setting procedure

- When using the machine as a print server
 1. Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin
 2. Setting the network interface board.
 3. Turning the machine off and then back on.
- When using the machine as a remote printer
 1. Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
 2. Setting the network interface board.
 3. Setting NetWare.
 4. Starting the print server.

↓ Note

- This procedure assumes an environment is already prepared for normal NetWare running the printing service setting.
- The procedure is explained with the following example settings:
 - File server's name ...CAREE
 - Print server's name ...PSERV
 - Printer's name ...R-PRN
 - Queue name ...R-QUEUE

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

To use the machine in a NetWare environment, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin to set the NetWare printing environment.

Printers listed by SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin lists printers connected to the network. If you cannot identify the machine you want to configure, print configuration page, and then check the machine name.

Note

- The NetWare Client provided by Novell is required to set the printing environment using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin under the following environments:
 - NDS or Bindery mode in Windows 2000
 - NDS or Bindery mode in Windows XP
- For details about SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, see "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin".

Reference

- p.137 "Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin"

Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 3.x)

Follow the procedure below to connect the machine as a print server using NetWare 3.x.

1. Start Web Image Monitor.

2. Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and password appears.

3. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].

- **Print Server Name:** Enter the NetWare print server name. To use the interface board as a print server, enter the name of a print server that is not active on the file server. Use up to 47 characters.
- **Ligon Mode:** Specify whether to designate a file server or NDS tree when logging on to NetWare.
- **File Server Name:** When a file server name is entered here, only the specified file server is searched for. This item is mandatory. Use up to 47 characters.
- **NDS Tree:** To enable NDS mode, enter the name of the NDS tree you want to log on to. Use up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
- **NDS Context Name:** To enable NDS mode, enter the print server context. Use up to 127 characters.
- **Operation Mode:** Specify whether to use the interface board as a print server or a remote printer.
- **Remote Printer No.:** This item is effective when the interface board is specified as a remote printer. Enter the same number as the number of the printer to be created on the print server (0 to 254 characters).

- **Job Timeout:** When the interface board is used as a NetWare remote printer, the printer cannot detect when a print job ends. Therefore, the printer terminates printing when a certain period of time has elapsed since it last received print data (i.e., when it has not received print data for a certain period of time). Specify here this period of time (3 to 255 seconds). The initial value is 15 (seconds).
- **Frame Type:** Select the frame type from the drop-down menu.
- **Print Server Protocol:** Select the protocol for NetWare from the drop-down menu.
- **NCP Delivery Protocol:** Select the protocol for NCP delivery.

3**5. Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].**

Configuration is now complete. Wait several before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6. Click [Logout].**Note**

- To check the configuration is correct, enter the following from the command prompt:
F:> USERLIST
- If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as a connected user.
- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the configuration page printed from the printer.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Setting Up as a Print Server (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5)

Follow the procedure below to connect the machine as a print server using NetWare 4.x, NetWare 5/5.1, or NetWare 6 / 6.5.

★ Important

- When using the printer as a print server in NetWare 4.x, NetWare 5/5.1, or NetWare 6/6.5, set it to the NDS mode.
- When using NetWare 5/5.1 or NetWare 6/6.5, set the printer as a print server.

1. Start Web Image Monitor.

2. Click [Login].

A dialog box for entering the login user name and password appears.

3. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].**5. Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].**

Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6. Click [Logout].**7. Quit Web Image Monitor.****Note**

- To check the configuration is correct, enter the following from the command prompt:
F:> USERLIST
- If the printer works as configured, the name of the print server appears as a connected user.
- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the configuration page printed from the printer. If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Using Pure IP in the NetWare 5/5.1 or 6/6.5 Environment

Follow the procedure below to connect the machine as a print server in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5/5.1 or NetWare 6/6.5.

Important

- When creating a queued print server in a pure IP environment of NetWare 5/5.1 or NetWare 6/6.5, create a print queue on the file server using NetWare Administrator.
- This printer is not available as a remote printer for use in a pure IP environment.
- To use the printer in a pure IP environment, set it to IPv4.

Setting up using NWadmin

1. From Windows, start NWadmin.

For details about NWadmin, see the NetWare manuals.

2. Select the object in which the print queue is located in the directory tree, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

3. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Queue], and then click [OK].

4. In the [Print Queue Name] box, enter the name of the print queue.

5. In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse].

6. In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and then click [OK].

7. Check the settings, and then click [Create].

8. Select the object in which the printer is located, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

9. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Printer], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Printer (Non NDPS)].

10. In the [Printer name] box, enter the printer name.

11. Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].

12. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.

13. In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].

14. Click [Configuration], click [Parallel] in the [Printer type] list, and then click [Communication].

15. Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] area, and then click [OK].

16. Check the settings, and then click [OK].

17. Select a context specified, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

18. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Server], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Print Server (Non NDPS)].

19. In the [Print Server Name] box, enter the print server name.

Use the same print server name specified using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

20. Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].

21. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.

22. In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].

23. Check the settings, and then click [OK].

24. Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

To quit

CAREE: unload pserver

To start

CAREE: load pserver [print server name]

Setting up using Web Image Monitor**1. Start Web Image Monitor.****2. Click [Login].**

A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

3. Enter the user login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login name and password, consult your network administrator.

4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].**5. Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].**

Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6. Click [Logout].**7. Quit Web Image Monitor.****Note**

- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the configuration page printed from the printer.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 3.x)

Follow the procedure below to use the machine as a remote printer under NetWare 3.x.

Setting up using PCONSOLE**1. Enter "PCONSOLE" from the command prompt.**

F:> PCONSOLE

2. Create a print queue.

When using the existing print queue, go to the procedure for creating a printer.

3. From the [Available Options] menu, select [Print Queue Information], and then press the [Enter] key.**4. Press [Insert] key, and then enter a print queue name.****5. Press [Esc] key to return to the [Available Options] menu.****6. Set up the network connection to a printer.****7. On the [Available Options] menu, click [Print Server Information], and then press the [Enter] key.****8. To create a new print server, press the [Insert] key, and then enter a print server name.**

For a currently defined print server, select a print server in the [Print Server] list.

Use the same printer name specified using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

9. From the [Print Server Information] menu, select [Print Server Configuration].**10. From the [Print Server Configuration] menu, select [Printer Configuration].****11. Select the printer indicated as [Not Installed].**

Use the same printer number specified as the remote printer number using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

12. To change the printer name, enter a new name.

A name "printer x" is assigned to the printer. The "x" stands for the number of the selected printer.

13. As type, select [Remote Parallel, LPT1].

The IRQ, Buffer size, Starting form, and Queue service mode are automatically configured.

14. Press the [Esc] key, and then click [Yes] on the confirmation message.**15. Press the [Esc] key to return to [Print Server Configuration Menu].****16. Assign print queues to the created printer.****17. From [Print Server Configuration Menu], select [Queues Serviced By Printer].****18. Select the printer created.****19. Press the [Insert] key to select a queue serviced by the printer.**

You can select several queues.

20. Follow the instructions on the screen to make other necessary settings.

Following these steps, check that the queues are assigned.

21. Press the [Esc] key until "Exit?" appears, and then select [Yes] to exit PCONSOLE.**22. Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.**

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

To quit

CAREE: unload pserver

To start

CAREE: load pserver [print server name]

If the printer works as configured, the message "Waiting for job" appears.

Setting up using Web Image Monitor**1. Start Web Image Monitor.****2. Click [Login].**

A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

3. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].**5. Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].**

Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6. Click [Logout].**7. Quit Web Image Monitor.****Note**

- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the configuration page printed from the printer.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Setting Up as a Remote Printer (NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5)

Follow the procedure below to use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 4.x, 5/ 5.1 and 6/6.5.

★ Important

- To use the printer as a remote printer under NetWare 4.x, 5/5.1, 6/6.5, set it to NDS mode.
- Do not use the printer as a remote printer when Pure IP is used.

Setting up using NWadmin

1. From Windows, start NWadmin.

For details about NWadmin, see the NetWare manuals.

2. Set up the network connection to a print queue. Select the object in which the print queue is located in the directory tree, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

3. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Queue], and then click [OK].

4. In the [Print Queue Name] box, enter the name of the print queue.

5. In the [Print Queue Volume] box, click [Browse].

6. In the [Available objects] box, click the volume in which the print queue is created, and then click [OK].

7. Check the settings, and then click [Create].

8. Set up the network connection to a printer. Select the object in which the printer is located, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

9. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Printer], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Printer (Non NDPS)].

10. In the [Printer name] box, enter the printer name.

11. Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].

12. Assign print queues to the created printer. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.

13. In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].

14. Click [Configuration], click [Parallel] in the [Printer type] list, and then click [Communication].

15. Click [Manual load] in the [Communication type] area, and then click [OK]. Check the settings, and then click [OK].

16. Set up the network connection to a print server. Select a context specified, and then click [Create] on the [Object] menu.

17. In the [Class of new object] box, click [Print Server], and then click [OK]. For NetWare 5, click [Print Server (Non NDPS)].

18. In the [Print Server Name:] box, enter the print server name.

Use the same print server name specified using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

19. Select the [Define additional properties] check box, and then click [Create].

20. Assign the printer to the created print server. Click [Assignments], and then click [Add] in the [Assignments] area.

21. In the [Available objects] box, click the queue you created, and then click [OK].

22. In the [Printers] area, click the printer you assigned, and then click [Printer Number].

23. Enter the printer number, and then click [OK]. Check the settings, and then click [OK].

Use the same printer number specified as the remote printer number using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

24. Start the print server by entering the following from the console of the NetWare server.

If the print server is in operation, quit and restart it.

To exit

CAREE: unload pserver

To start

CAREE: load pserver [print server name]

25. Enter the printer server name as the context name, and then press the [Enter] key.**26. Select the printer name on the context menu, and then press the [Enter] key.****Setting up using Web Image Monitor****1. Start Web Image Monitor.****2. Click [Login].**

A dialog box for entering the login user name and login password appears.

3. Enter the user login name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

4. Click [Configuration] in the left area, and then click [NetWare Print Settings].**5. Confirm the settings, and then click [Device Name].**

Configuration is now complete. Wait several minutes before restarting Web Image Monitor.

6. Click [Logout].**7. Quit Web Image Monitor.****Note**

- If you cannot identify the printer you want to configure, check the printer name against the configuration page printed from the printer.
- If no printer names appear in the list, match the frame types of IPX/SPXs for the computer and printer. Use the [Network] dialog box of Windows to change the frame type of the computer.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

4. Monitoring and Configuring the Printer

This chapter describes how to monitoring and configuring the printer.

Using Web Image Monitor

Using Web Image Monitor, you can check the machine status and change settings.

Available operations

The following operations can be remotely performed using Web Image Monitor from a client computer.

- Displaying machine status or settings
- Checking the print job status or history
- Checking, modifying, printing, or deleting print jobs stored in the Document Server
- Interrupting currently printing jobs
- Resetting the machine
- Managing the Address Book
- Making machine settings
- Making network protocol settings
- Making security settings

Configuring the machine

To perform the operations from Web Image Monitor, TCP/IP is required. After the machine is configured to use TCP/IP, operations from Web Image Monitor become available.

Recommended Web browser

- Windows:
 - Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2 or higher
 - Firefox 1.0 or higher
- Mac OS:
 - Firefox 1.0 or higher
 - Safari 1.0, 1.2, 2.0 (412.2) or higher

Web Image Monitor supports screen reader software. We recommend JAWS 7.0 or a later version.

Note

- Safari cannot be used on Mac OS X 10.4.1.

- Display and operation problems can occur if you do not enable JavaScript and cookies, or if you are using a non-recommended Web Browser.
- If you are using a proxy server, change the Web browser settings. Contact your administrator for information about the settings.
- If you click your browser's back button but the previous page does not appear, click the browser's refresh button and try again.
- Machine information is not automatically updated. To perform an update, click [Refresh] in the display area.
- We recommend using Web Image Monitor in the same network.
- You cannot access to the machine from outside the firewall.
- When using the machine under DHCP, the IP address may be automatically changed by the DHCP server settings. Enable DDNS setting on the machine, and then connect using the machine's host name. Alternatively, set a static IP address to the DHCP server.
- If the HTTP port is disabled, connection to the machine using the machine's URL cannot be established. SSL setting must be enabled on this machine. For details, consult your network administrator.
- When using the SSL encryption protocol, enter "https://(machine's IP address or host name)/".
- Internet Explorer must be installed on your computer. Use the most recent available version. We recommend Internet Explorer 6.0 or later.
- When you are using Firefox, fonts and colors may be different, or tables may be out of shape.
- When using a host name under Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, or Windows Vista with IPv6 protocol, perform host name resolution using an external DNS server. The host file cannot be used.
- To use JAWS 7.0 under Web Image Monitor, you must be running Windows OS and Microsoft Internet Explorer 5.5 SP2, or a later version.

Displaying Top Page

This section explains the Top Page and how to display Web Image Monitor.

Important

- **When entering an IPv4 address, do not begin segments with zeros. For example: If the address is "192.168.001.010", you must enter it as "192.168.1.10".**

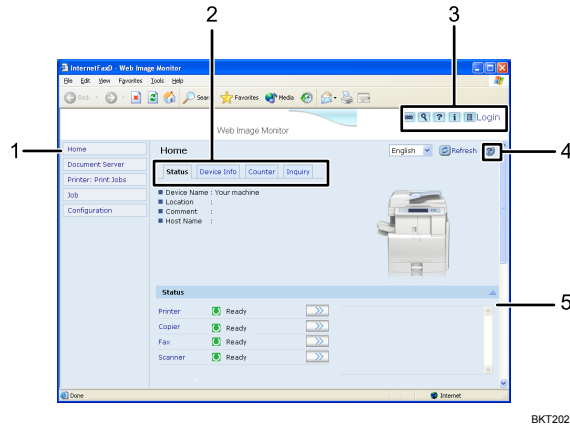
- 1. Start your Web browser.**
- 2. Enter "http://(machine's IP address or host name)/" in your Web browser's URL bar.**

Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.

If the machine's host name has been registered on the DNS or WINS server, you can enter it.

When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentication is issued, enter "https://(machine's IP address or host name)/".

Every Web Image Monitor page is divided into the following areas:



BKT202S

4

1. Menu area

If you select menu, its content will be shown on the work area, or the sub area.

2. Tab area

Details about each menu appear.

3. Header area

The dialog box for switching to the user mode and administrator mode appears, and each mode's menu will be displayed.

The link to help and dialog box for keyword search appears.

4. Help

Use Help to view or download Help file contents.

5. Display area

Displays the contents of the item selected in the menu area.

Machine information in the display area is not automatically updated. Click [Refresh] at the upper right in the display area to update the machine information. Click the Web browser's [Refresh] button to refresh the entire browser screen.

Note

- When using a host name under Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, or Windows Vista with IPv6 protocol, perform host name resolution using an external DNS server. The host file cannot be used.

When User Authentication is Set

Login (using Web Image Monitor)

Follow the procedure below to log on when user authentication is set.

1. Click [Login].
2. Enter a login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

↓ Note

- For user code authentication, enter a user code in [Login User Name], and then click [Login].
- The procedure may differ depending on the Web browser used.

Log out (using Web Image Monitor)

1. Click [Logout] to log off.

↓ Note

- When you log on and made the setting, always click [Logout].

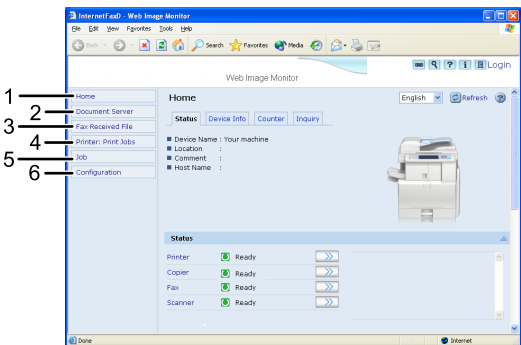
About Menu and Mode

There are two modes available with Web Image Monitor: guest mode and administrator mode.

Displayed Items may differ depending on the machine type.

Guest Mode

In the guest mode, machine status, settings, and print job status can be viewed, but the machine settings cannot be changed.



BKT203S

1. Home

The [Status], [Device Info], [Counter], and [Inquiry] tab are displayed. Details of the tab menu are displayed on the work area.

2. Document Server

Display files stored in the Document Server.

3. Fax Received File

Display received fax files.

4. Printer: Print Jobs

Allows you to display list of Sample Print, Locked Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print jobs.

5. Job

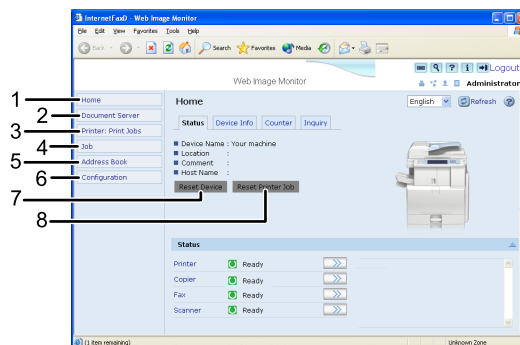
Display all print files.

6. Configuration

Display current machine and network settings.

Administrator Mode

In the administrator mode, you can configure various machine settings.



BKT204S

1. Home

The [Status], [Device Info], [Counter], and [Inquiry] tab are displayed. Details of the tab menu are displayed on the work area.

2. Document Server

Display files stored in the Document Server.

3. Printer: Print Jobs

Allows you to display list of Locked Print, Sample Print, Hold Print, and Stored Print jobs.

4. Job

Display all print files.

5. Address Book

User information can be registered, displayed, changed, and deleted.

6. Configuration

Make system settings for the machine, interface settings, and security.

7. Reset Device

Click to reset the printer. If a print job is being processed, the printer will be reset after the print job is completed. This button is located on Top Page.

8. Reset Printer Job

Click to reset current print jobs and print jobs in queue. This button is located on Top Page.

Access in the Administrator Mode

4

Follow the procedure below to access Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.

1. On Top Page, click [Login].

The window for entering the login user name and password appears.

2. Enter your login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

List of Setting Items

The following tables show Web Image Monitor items that can be viewed or modified depending on the selected mode on the Web browser. Select one of the following modes to log on Web Image Monitor:

- Guest mode: logged on as a user
- Administrator mode: logged on as an administrator

Home

Status

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Reset Device	None	Modify
Reset Printer Job	None	Modify
Status	Read	Read
Toner	Read	Read
Input Tray	Read	Read
Output Tray	Read	Read

Device Info

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Functions	Read	Read
System	Read	Read
Version	Read	Read
Printer Language	Read	Read

Counter

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Copier	Read	Read
Printer	Read	Read
Fax	Read	Read
Send/TX Total	Read	Read
Fax Transmission	Read	Read
Scanner Send	Read	Read
Coverage	Read	Read
Other Function(s)	Read	Read

4

Inquiry

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Machine Maintenance/Repair	Read	Read
Sales Representative	Read	Read

Document Server

Document Server

Guest mode	Administrator mode
Read/Modify	Read/Modify

Fax Received File

Guest mode	Administrator mode
Read/Modify	None

Printer: Print Jobs

Print Job List

Guest mode	Administrator mode
Read/Modify	Read/Modify

4

Job

Job List

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Current/Waiting Jobs	Read	Read/Modify
Job History	Read	Read

Printer

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Job History	Read	Read
Error Log	Read	Read

Fax History

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Transmission	Read	Read/Modify
Reception	Read	Read/Modify
LAN-Fax	Read	Read

Document Server

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Print Job History	Read/Modify	Read/Modify

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Fax Remote Send History	Read/Modify	Read/Modify
Scanner Remote Send History	Read/Modify	Read/Modify

Address Book

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Address Book	None	Read/Modify

Configuration

Device Settings

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
System	Read	Read/Modify
Paper	Read	Read/Modify
Date/Time	Read	Read/Modify
Timer	Read	Read/Modify
Logs	None	Read/Modify
E-mail	Read	Read/Modify
Auto E-mail Notification	None	Read/Modify
On-demand E-mail Notification	None	Read/Modify
File Transfer	None	Read/Modify
User Authentication Management	None	Read/Modify
Administrator Authentication Management	None	Read/Modify
Program/Change Administrator	None	Read/Modify
LDAP Server	None	Read/Modify

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Firmware Update	None	Read/Modify
Program/Change Realm	None	Modify

Printer

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Basic Settings	Read	Read/Modify
Tray Parameters (PCL)	None	Read/Modify
Tray Parameters (PS)	None	Read/Modify
Virtual Printer Settings	Read	Read/Modify
PDF Temporary Password	Modify	None
PDF Group Password	None	Modify
PDF Fixed Password	None	Modify

Fax

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Initial Settings	None	Read/Modify
Send / Reception Settings	None	Read/Modify
IP-Fax Settings	None	Read/Modify
IP-Fax Gateway Settings	None	Read/Modify
Parameter Settings	None	Read/Modify

Scanner

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
General Settings	Read	Read/Modify
Scan Settings	Read	Read/Modify
Send Settings	Read	Read/Modify

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Initial Settings	Read	Read/Modify
Default Settings for Normal Screens on Device	Read	Read/Modify
Default Settings for Simplified Screens on Device	Read	Read/Modify

Interface

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Interface Settings	Read	Read/Modify
Wireless LAN Settings	Read	Read/Modify

4

Network

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
IPv4	Read	Read/Modify
IPv6	Read	Read/Modify
NetWare	Read	Read/Modify
AppleTalk	Read	Read/Modify
SMB	Read	Read/Modify
SNMP	None	Read/Modify
SNMPv3	None	Read/Modify
SSDP	None	Read/Modify
Bonjour	Read	Read/Modify
System Log	Read	Read

Security

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Network Security	None	Read/Modify

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Access Control	None	Read/Modify
IPP Authentication	None	Read/Modify
SSL/TLS	None	Read/Modify
ssh	None	Read/Modify
Site Certificate	None	Read/Modify
Device Certificate	None	Read/Modify
IPsec	None	Read/Modify
User Lockout Policy	None	Read/Modify
IEEE 802.1X (WPA/WPA2)	None	Read/Modify
S/MIME	None	Read/Modify

RC Gate

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Setup RC Gate	None	Read/Modify
Update RC Gate Firmware	None	Read
RC Gate Proxy Server	None	Read/Modify

Webpage

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Webpage	Read	Read/Modify

Extended Feature Settings

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Startup Setting	None	Read/Modify
Extended Feature Info	None	Read
Install	None	Read/Modify

Menu	Guest mode	Administrator mode
Uninstall	None	Read/Modify
Change Allocation	None	Read/Modify
Administrator Tools	None	Read/Modify
Copy Extended Features	None	Read/Modify
Copy Card Save Data	None	Read/Modify

↓ Note

- Some items are not displayed depending on the security settings.

4

Displaying Web Image Monitor Help

When using Help for the first time, clicking the icon marked “?” () makes the following screen appear, in which you can view Help in two different ways, as shown below:

Viewing Help on our Web site

Downloading Help to your computer

Downloading and Checking Help

You can download Help to your computer. As the Help URL, you can specify the path to the local file to view the Help without connecting to the Internet.

↓ Note

- By clicking “?” () in the header area, the contents of Help appear.
- By clicking “?” () in the display area, Help for the setting items in the display area appears.

Downloading Help

1. In the [OS] list, select the operating system.
2. In the [Language] list, select the language.
3. Click [Download].
4. Download Help by following the instructions on the screen.
5. Store the downloaded compressed file in a given location, and then decompress the file.

To create a link for the Help button () , save the downloaded Help files on a Web server.

Linking the URL of the downloaded Help

You can link the URL of the help file on a computer or Web server to the "?" button.

1. Log in to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.
2. In the menu area, click [Configuration].
3. Click [Webpage].
4. In the [Set Help URL Target] box, enter the URL of the help file.

If you saved the help file to "C:\HELP\EN", enter "file:///C:/HELP/". For example, if you saved the file to a Web server, and the URL of the index file is "http:// a.b.c.d/HELP/EN/index.html", enter "http://a.b.c.d/HELP/".

5. Click [OK].

Note

- If you save the Help files on your hard disk, you must access them directly - you cannot link to them using the Help button ( .

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can monitor the network printers. Also, you can change the configuration of the network interface board using TCP/IP or IPX/SPX.

★ Important

- IPv6 cannot be used on this function.
- IPX/SPX (NetWare) cannot be used under Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008.
- NetWare is disabled by default. To enable NetWare, change the "NetWare" settings in Web Image Monitor, or use the "set" command in telnet. For details, see Web Image Monitor Help, or "Remote Maintenance by Telnet".

Protocol stack provided with Operating System

- Windows 2000
TCP/IP
IPX/SPX
NetWare
Novell Client
- Windows Server 2003/2003 R2
TCP/IP
IPX/SPX
Novell Client
- Windows Server 2008
TCP/IP
- Windows XP
TCP/IP
IPX/SPX
Novell Client
- Windows Vista
TCP/IP

Available operations

The following functions are available:

- Limits settings done from the control panel, and disables changes made to certain items.
- Enables selection of paper type loaded in the machine.
- Switches to, and comes out of Energy Saver mode.
- Checks information about printing, paper quantity, etc.

- Simultaneously monitors multiple printers. When there are many printers, you can create groups and classify printers to facilitate management.
- Checks the machine's network settings and detailed device information.
- Enables you to change the machine's network settings.
- You can check details of print jobs sent from a computer.
- Allows you to check job histories of printed, faxed (LAN-Fax), scanned, and photocopied documents identified by user codes.
- Allows selection of functions such as printing and scanning for each user code.
- Fax numbers and e-mail addresses stored in the machine can be changed and saved by computer.
- You can check each fax job history entry.
- You can make settings for and display the status changes of group devices.
- Using Address Management Tool, you can manage LAN-Fax numbers, user names for Scan to Folder, and addresses for sending and receiving Internet faxes.
- The e-mail sender's name and folder can be protected.

Installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

Follow the procedure below to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin

- 1. Quit all applications currently running.**
- 2. Insert the CD-ROM into the CD-ROM drive.**

The installer starts.

- 3. Select an interface language, and then click [OK].**

The following languages are available: Czech, Danish, German, English, Spanish, French, Italian, Hungarian, Dutch, Norwegian, Polish, Portuguese, Finnish, Swedish, Chinese Simple and Chinese Traditional.

- 4. Click SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
- 5. Click [Next].**

The software license agreement appears in the License Agreement dialog box.

- 6. After reading through its contents, click [Next].**
- 7. Follow the instructions on the screen.**

A message appears when the installation is completed.

- 8. Click [OK].**

A message about restarting the computer may appear. Restart the computer to complete installation.

↓ Note

- Auto Run may not work under certain operating system settings. In this case, launch "Setup.exe" located on the CD-ROM root directory.
- If you are required to restart the computer after installing SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, restart the computer and continue the configuration.

Changing the Network Interface Board Configuration

Follow the procedure below to change the network interface board configuration using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

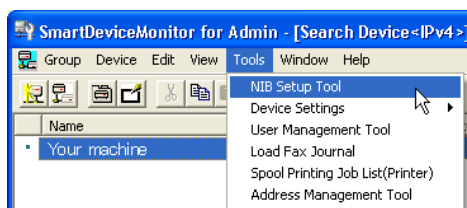
1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **In the list, select a machine whose configuration you want to change.**
4. **On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].**



A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

NIB Setup Tool starts. Click [Web browser], and then click [OK].

5. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

6. **Configure settings using Web Image Monitor.**
7. **Click [Logout].**
8. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**
9. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

Reference

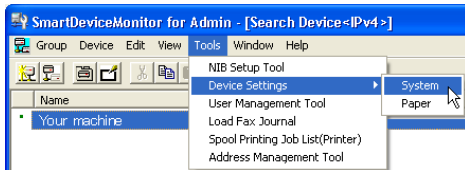
- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Locking the Menus on the Machine's Control Panel

4

Follow the procedure below to lock the menus on the machine's control panel.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**
A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.
Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.
If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.
3. **Select a machine.**
4. **On the [Tools] menu, point to [Device Settings], and then click [System].**



A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**
For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.
The [System] page of Web Image Monitor appears.
6. **On the [Protect Printer Display Panel], select [Level 1] or [Level 2].**
7. **Click [OK].**
8. **Click [Logout].**
9. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**
10. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Changing the Paper Type

Follow the procedure below to change the paper type.

4

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **In the list, select a machine whose configuration you want to change.**

4. **On the [Tools] menu, point to [Device Settings], and then click [Paper].**

A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

The [Paper] page appears.

Select a paper type in the [Paper Type] list for each tray. Enter required setting items.

6. **Click [Logout].**

7. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

8. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about setting items, see Help in the General Settings on Configuration page.

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Managing User Information

Follow the procedure below to manage the user's information using SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Prints jobs can be managed and functions restricted by user codes.

Starting User Management Tool

Follow the procedure below to start User Management Tool.

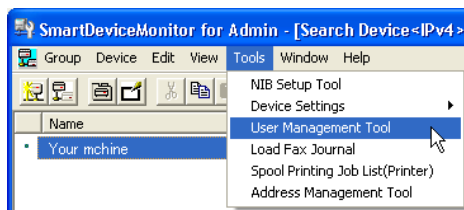
1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. **In the list, select a machine you want to manage.**
4. **On the [Tools] menu, click [User Management Tool].**



A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

5. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].**

For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

User Management Tool starts.

Note

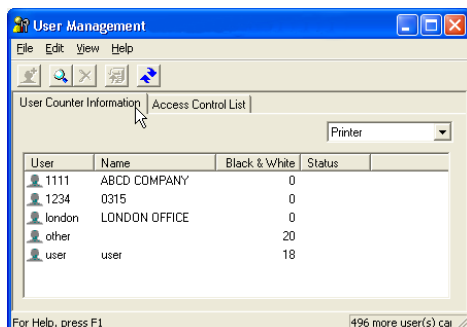
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about User Management Tool, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Displaying the Number of Sheets Printed

Follow the procedure below to display the number of sheets printed under each user.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.**

2. Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.



The number of pages printed under each user appears.

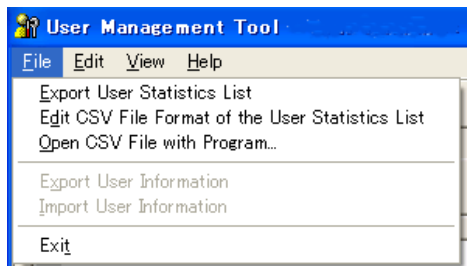
3. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

4

Exporting the information about the number of pages printed

Follow the procedure below to export the information of the number of pages printed under each user as a .csv file.

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.
2. Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.
3. On the [File] menu, click [Export User Statistics List].



4. Specify the save location and file name, and then click [Save].
5. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

Resetting the number of pages printed to 0.

Follow the procedure below to reset the number of pages printed under each user to 0.

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.
2. Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.
3. Select the user whose information you want to reset.

4. On the [Edit] menu, click [Reset User Counters].



5. Select the check box of the items you want to reset, and then click [OK].

A confirmation message appears.

6. Click [OK].

The count for the selected paper type becomes 0 and [Modified] is displayed for [Status].

7. On the [Edit] menu, click [Apply Settings].



Changes are applied to information on the User Counter Information tab.

8. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

Restricting Functions

Follow the procedure below to restrict use of individual functions.

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.
2. Click the [User Counter Information] tab of User Management Tool.
3. Click the user whose functions you want to restrict.
4. On the [Edit] menu of User Management Tool, click [Restrict Access To Device].



4

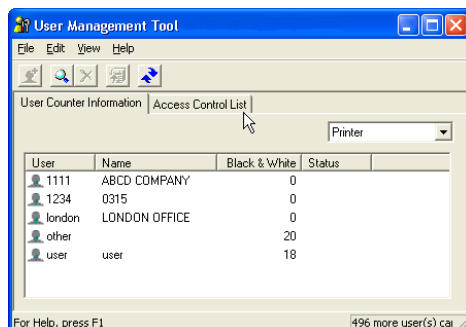
5. Select the check box of the functions you want to restrict.
6. Click [OK].
A confirmation message appears.
7. Click [Yes].
The settings are applied.
8. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

Setting Applicable Functions to New Users

Follow the procedure below to add new users and set functions applicable to them.

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin User Management Tool.

2. Click the [Access Control List] tab of User Management Tool.



3. On the [Edit] menu, click [Add New User].



4. Enter the user code and user name.

5. Select the check box of the functions applicable to the new user.

If the check boxes are unavailable, there is no restriction to use that function.

6. Click [OK].

The user is added, and [New] is displayed for [Status].

7. On the [Edit] menu, click [Apply Settings].

The settings are applied.

8. Click [Exit] on the [File] menu to quit User Management Tool.

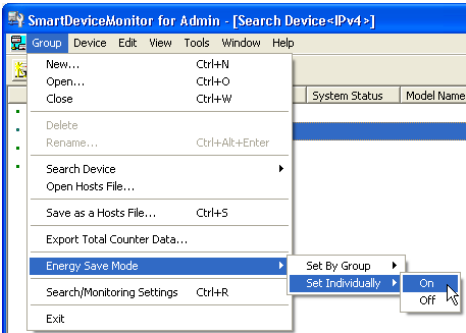
Note

- For details about setting restrictions, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Configuring Energy Saver Mode

Follow the procedure below to configure Energy Saver mode.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**
A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.
Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.
If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.
3. **Select the machine whose settings you want to make.**
To make settings for all machines in the selected group, select no machine.
4. **Click the [Group] menu, point to [Energy Save Mode], [Set Individually], and then click [On].**



To select all the machines in the group, select [Set By Group].

To disable Energy Save mode, click [Off].

5. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

- For details about the setting for Energy Saver mode, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Setting a Password

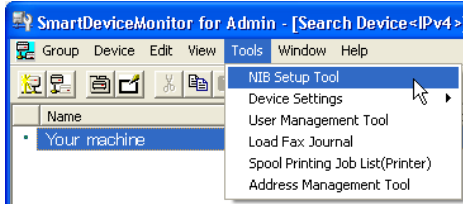
Follow the procedure below to set a password.

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**
A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. In the list, select a machine whose configuration you want to change.
4. On the [Tools] menu, click [NIB Setup Tool].



4

A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instructions on the screen.

5. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].
- For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.
6. Click [Configuration].
7. Click [Program/Change Administrator] on the [Device Settings] area, and then change the settings.
8. Click [OK].
9. Click [Logout].
10. Quit Web Image Monitor.
11. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

↓ Note

- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.

Checking the Machine Status

Follow the procedure below to check machine status.

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
2. On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using TCP/IP SNMP v3, enter the user authentication.

3. Click the [View] menu, and then click [Select List Columns].
4. From [Device] in the [Select List Columns] dialog box, select the items you want to display, and then click [Add].
Selected items will move to [Show].
5. Move all the items you want to display, and then click [OK].
An icon in the list indicates the machine's status.
6. For information about a machine's status, select the machine you want to know about, and then click [Open] in the [Device Settings] menu.
The dialog box of the selected machine appears.
7. Click the application whose status you want to view.
The machine's status is displayed.
8. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

↓ Note

- For details about items in the dialog box, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

Changing Names and Comments

Follow the procedure below to change the names and comments of the machine.

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.
2. On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].
A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.
Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.
If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.
3. Select a machine in the list, and then click [NIB Setup Tool] on the [Tools] menu.
A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.
NIB Setup Tool starts when the network interface board is default. Follow the instructions on the screen.
4. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].
For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.
5. Click [Configuration].
6. Click [System] on the [Device Settings] area, and then change the settings.
7. Click [OK].
8. Click [Logout].

9. Quit Web Image Monitor.**10. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.****Note**

- In the [Device Name] box, enter a device name on the machine using up to 31 characters.
- In the [Comment] box, enter a comment on the machine using up to 31 characters.
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

4

Loading Fax Journal

1. Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**2. On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**

A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. Select a machine in the list, and then click [Load Fax Journal] on the [Tools] menu.

A Web browser opens and the window for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.

4. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

[Fax Journal] area appears in the Web Image Monitor.

5. Click [Logout].**6. Quit Web Image Monitor.****7. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.****Note**

- For details, see Help in Fax Journal area.
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Viewing and Deleting Spool Print Jobs

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**
2. **On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].**
A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.
Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.
If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.
3. **Select a machine in the list, and then click [Spool Printing Job List(Printer)] on the [Tools] menu.**
A Web browser opens and the dialog box for entering the login user name and password for the Web Image Monitor administrator appears.
4. **Enter the login user name and password, and then click [Login].**
For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.
[Spool Printing Job List] appears in the Web Image Monitor.
5. **Click [Logout].**
6. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**
7. **Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

Note

- To display Spool Printing Job List, [Spool Printing] must be set to [Active] on Web Image Monitor in advance.
- To delete the Spool Printing Job, select the document you want to delete and then click [Delete].
- For details, see Help in the [Spool Printing Job List] area.
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Managing Address Information

1. **Start SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.**

2. On the [Group] menu, point to [Search Device], and then click [IPv4], [IPX/SPX] or [IPv4 SNMPv3].

A list of machines using the selected protocol appears.

Select the protocol of the machine whose configuration you want to change.

If you are using IPv4 SNMPv3, enter the user authentication.

3. Select a machine in the list, and then click [Address Management Tool] on the [Tools] menu.

The dialog box for entering the login user name and password appears.

4. Enter the login user name and password, and then click [OK].

For details about the login user name and password, consult your network administrator.

[Address Management Tool] starts. Make the necessary settings.

5. Click [Exit].

6. Quit SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.

Note

- For details, see Address Management Tool Help.
- For details about login user names and passwords, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.

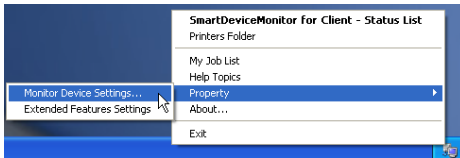
Using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

To view the status of machines using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, configure SmartDeviceMonitor for Client beforehand.

Monitoring Printers

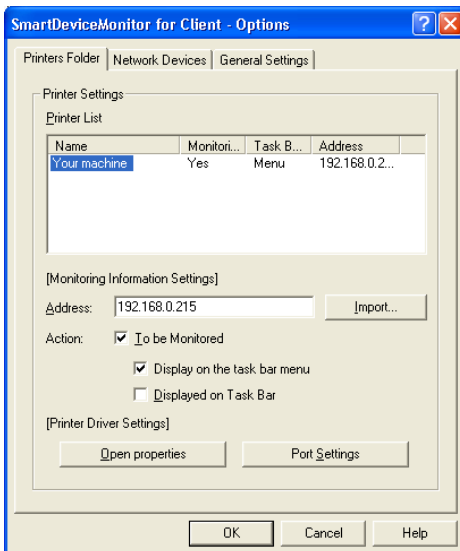
Follow the procedure below to monitor the machine using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

1. Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, point to [Properties], and then click [Monitor Device Settings...].



The [SmartDeviceMonitor for Client - Options] dialog box appears.

2. On the [Printers Folder] tab, select the machine you want to monitor, and then select the [To Be Monitored] check box in the Monitoring Information Settings area.



To display the machine status on the task bar, you must first select the [To be Monitored] check box, and then select the [Displayed on Task Bar] check box.

3. Click [OK].

The dialog box closes and the configured machine is monitored.

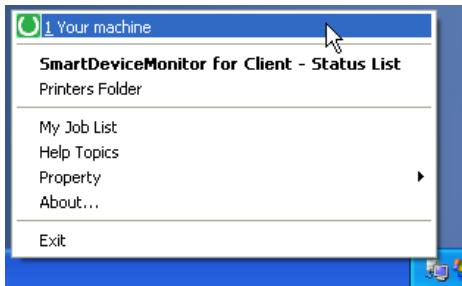
↓ Note

- For details about status icons, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

Checking the Machine Status

Follow the procedure below to check machine status using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

1. Right-click the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client icon, and then click the machine.



The machine status appears in the dialog box.

↓ Note

- For details about items in the dialog box, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Client Help.

When Using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client

When using IPP with SmartDeviceMonitor for Client, note the following:

- The network printer can only receive one print job from SmartDeviceMonitor for Client at a time. While the network printer is printing, another user cannot access it until the job is finished. In this case, SmartDeviceMonitor for Client tries to access the network printer until the retry interval expires.
- If SmartDeviceMonitor for Client cannot access the network printer and times out, it will stop sending the print job. In this case, you should cancel the paused status from the print queue window. SmartDeviceMonitor for Client will resume access to the network printer. You can delete the print job from the print queue window, but canceling a print job printed by the network printer might cause the next job sent from another user to be incorrectly printed.
- If a print job sent from SmartDeviceMonitor for Client is interrupted and the network printer cancels the job because something went wrong, send the print job again.
- Print jobs sent from another computer do not appear in the print queue window, regardless of protocol.
- If various users send print jobs using SmartDeviceMonitor for Client to network printers, the printing order might not be the same as that in which the jobs were sent.
- An IP address cannot be used for the IPP port name because the IP address is used for the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port name.

- When setting SSL, a protocol for encrypted communication, under environment which server authentication is issued, enter "https://(machine's IP address or host name)/ ". Internet Explorer must be installed on your computer. Use the highest version. Internet Explorer 6.0 or higher is recommended.
- If the [Security Alert] dialog box appears when accessing the machine using IPP to create or configure an IPP port, or when printing, install the certificate. To select the certificate store location when using Certificate Import Wizard, click [Place all certificates in the following store], and then click [Local Computer] under [Trusted Root Certification Authorities].

Note

- For details about SSL settings, consult your network administrator.

Printer Status Notification by E-Mail

Whenever a paper tray becomes empty or paper is jammed, an e-mail alert is issued to the registered addresses to notify the printer status.

For this notification, you can make the e-mail notification settings.

Notification timing and e-mail content can be set.

★ Important

- Depending on your e-mail application, a phishing warning might appear after you receive an e-mail message. To prevent phishing warnings appearing after you receive e-mail from a specified sender, you must add the sender to your e-mail application's exclusion list. For details about how to do this, see your e-mail application's Help.

The e-mail notification functions you can set are as follows:

- Auto e-mail notification

Information including the machine status is automatically sent by e-mail. Before you use this function, register the e-mail address to be used.

- On-demand e-mail notification

Information including the machine status is sent by e-mail when a request from the administrator is received.

The information that can be notified by auto e-mail notification is as follows:

- Call Service
- Out of Toner
- Toner Almost Empty
- Paper Misfeed
- Cover Open
- Out of Paper
- Almost Out of Paper
- Paper Tray Error
- Output Tray Full
- Unit Connection Error
- Duplex Unit Error
- Waste Toner Bottle is Full
- Waste Toner Bottle is Almost Full
- Add Staples
- Hole Punch Receptacle is Full

- File Storage Memory Full Soon
- Log Error
- Device Access Violation
- Replacement Required: Unit
- Replacement Required Soon: Unit

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.

2. In the menu area, click [Configuration].

3. Click [E-mail] on the [Device Settings] area.

4. Make the following settings:

- Items in the Reception column: Make the necessary settings for sending and receiving e-mail.
- Items in the SMTP column: Configure the SMTP server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items. You can also perform mail authentication for the SMTP server.
- Items in the POP before SMTP column: Configure the POP server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items. You can also perform mail authentication for the POP server.
- Items in the POP3/IMAP4 column: Configure the POP3 or IMAP4 server. Check your mailing environment, and then specify the necessary items.
- Items in the E-mail Communication Port column: Configure the port to be used for access to the mail server.
- Items in the Fax E-Mail Account column: Specify these items if you want to use on-demand e-mail notification.
- Items in the E-mail Notification Account column: Specify these items If you want to use e-mail notification.

5. Click [OK].

6. Click [Logout].

7. Quit Web Image Monitor.

Note

- For details about login user name and password, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about the settings, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Setting the Account for E-mail Notification

Before you use Auto E-mail Notification or On-demand E-mail notification, setup an e-mail account to be used for the function. Perform the following configuration task in Web Image Monitor.

1. **Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.**
2. **Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [E-mail] on the [Device Settings] area.**
3. **Make the following settings in E-mail Notification Account:**
 - E-mail Notification E-mail Address: Enter the address using alphanumeric characters.
 - Receive E-mail Notification: Specify whether to use on-demand e-mail notification.
 - E-mail Notification User Name: Enter the administrator's user name as the mail originator name.
 - E-mail Notification Password: Enter the password of the mail notification user.
4. **Click [OK].**
5. **Click [Logout].**
6. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

Note

- The user name and e-mail address that is already registered as e-mail destination cannot be specified as the recipient of e-mail notification.

Mail Authentication

You can configure mail authentication to prevent illegal use of the mail server.

SMTP Authentication

Specify SMTP authentication.

When mail is sent to the SMTP server, authentication is performed using the SMTP AUTH protocol by prompting the mail originator to enter the user name and password. This prevents illegal use of the SMTP server.

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
2. Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [E-mail] on the [Device Settings] area.
3. Make the following settings in SMTP column:
 - SMTP Server Name: Enter the IP address or host name of the SMTP server
 - SMTP Port No.: Enter the port number used when sending e-mail to the SMTP server.
 - SMTP Authentication: Enable or disable SMTP authentication.
 - SMTP Auth. E-mail Address: Enter the e-mail address.
 - SMTP Auth. User Name: Enter the SMTP account name.

- SMTP Auth. Password: To set or change the password for SMTP AUTH.
- SMTP Auth. Encryption: Select whether to encrypt the password or not.
Encryption-Auto Select: If the authentication method is PLAIN, LOGIN, CRAM-MD5, or DIGEST-MD5.
Encryption-Active: If the authentication method is CRAM-MD5 or DIGEST-MD5.
Encryption-Inactive: If the authentication method is PLAIN or LOGIN.

4. Click [OK]
5. Click [Logout].
6. Quit Web Image Monitor.

POP before SMTP Authentication

Select whether to log on to the POP3 server before sending e-mail.

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
2. Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [E-mail] on the [Device Settings] area.
3. Make the following settings in POP before SMTP column:
 - POP before SMTP: Enable or disable POP before SMTP.
 - POP E-mail Address: Enter the e-mail address.
 - POP User Name: Enter the POP account name.
 - POP Password: To set or change the POP password.
 - Timeout setting after POP Auth.: Enter the time available before connecting to the SMTP server after logging on to the POP server.
4. Click [OK].
5. Click [Logout].
6. Quit Web Image Monitor.

Auto E-mail Notification

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.
2. Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [Auto E-mail Notification] on the [Device Settings] area.

The dialog box for making notification settings appears.

3. Make the following settings:

- Notification Message: You can set this according to your needs, for example, the machine's location, service representative contact information.
- Items in the Groups to Notify column: E-mail notification addresses can be grouped as required.

- Items in the Select Groups/Items to Notify column: Select groups for each notification type, such as machine status and error.

To make detailed settings for these items, click [Edit] next to [Detailed Settings of Each Item].

4. Click [OK].

5. Click [Logout].

6. Quit Web Image Monitor.

Note

- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about the settings, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

4

On-demand E-mail Notification

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in administrator mode.

2. Click [Configuration] in the menu area, and then click [On-demand E-mail Notification] on the [Device Settings] area.

The dialog box for making notification settings appears.

3. Make the following settings:

- Notification Subject: Enter a text string to be added to the subject line of return e-mails.
- Notification Message: You can set this according to your needs, for example, the machine's location, service representative contact information.
- Restriction to Device Status Info.: Select whether or not to allow access to the information such as the machine settings and status.
- Items in the Receivable E-mail Address/Domain Name Settings column: Enter an e-mail address or domain name to use for requesting information by e-mail and to receive its return e-mail.

4. Click [OK].

5. Click [Logout].

6. Quit Web Image Monitor.

Note

- For details about Web Image Monitor, see "Using Web Image Monitor".
- For details about the settings, see Web Image Monitor Help.

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Format of On-demand E-mail Messages

To use mail notification, you need to send an on-demand e-mail message to this machine.

Using your mail software, enter the following:

Item	Description
Subject (Referred to as Subject)	Enter "requeststatus".
From (Referred to as From)	Specify a valid mail address. The device information will be sent to the address specified here.

 Note

- A mail message must be within 1 MB in size.
- E-mail may be incomplete if sent immediately after power on.
- The subject is not case sensitive.
- The body of a request e-mail has no meaning. Any text written in the e-mail body is ignored.

Remote Maintenance by telnet

★ Important

- Remote Maintenance should be protected so that access is allowed to administrators only.
- The password is the same as the one of Web Image Monitor administrator. When the password is changed using “mshell”, other's change also.

Using telnet

4

Follow the procedure below to use telnet.

★ Important

- Only one user at a time can log on to perform remote maintenance.
- If you are using Windows Vista, you must enable the telnet server and telnet client beforehand.

1. Use the IP address or the host name of the machine to start telnet.

% telnet “IP address”

2. Enter your user name and password.

For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

For user authentication, enter a login user name and password.

For user code authentication, enter a user code in User Name.

3. Enter a command.

4. Quit telnet.

msh> logout

The configuration message about saving the changes appears.

5. Enter “yes” to save the changes, and then press the [Enter] key.

If you do not want to save the changes, enter “no”, and then press the [Enter] key. To make further changes, enter “return” at the command line, and then press the [Enter] key.

↓ Note

- If the message “Can not write NVRAM information” appears, the changes are not saved. Repeat the procedure above.
- When the changes are saved, the network interface board is reset automatically with that changes.
- When the network interface board resets, the print job in print process will be printed. However, print jobs in queue will be canceled.

access

Use the “access” command to view and configure access control. You can also specify two or more access ranges.

View settings

```
msh> access
```

IPv4 configuration display

```
msh> access ID range
```

IPv6 configuration display

```
msh> access ID range6
```

IPv6 access mask configuration display

```
msh> access ID mask6
```

IPv4 configuration

```
msh> access ID range “start-address end-address”
```

Example: to specify accessible IPv4 addresses between 192.168.0.10 and 192.168.0.20:

```
msh> access 1 range 192.168.0.10 192.168.0.20
```

IPv6 configuration

```
msh> access ID range6 “start-address end-address”
```

Example: to specify accessible IPv6 addresses between 2001:DB8::100 and 2001:DB8::200.

```
msh> access 1 range6 2001:DB8::100 2001:DB8::200
```

IPv6 access mask configuration

```
msh> access ID mask6 “base-address prefixlen”
```

Example: to specify accessible IPv6 addresses to 2001:DB8::/32

```
msh> access 1 mask6 2001:DB8:: 32
```

Access control initialization

```
msh> access flush
```

- Use the “flush” command to restore the default settings so that all access ranges become “0.0.0.0” for IPv4, and “::” for IPv6.

Note

- You can specify each IPv6 entry by either range or mask. For the range parameter, you can select “start-address end-address”. For the mask parameter, you can select “base-address prefixlen”.
- The access range restricts computers from use of the machine by IP address. If you do not need to restrict printing, make the setting “0.0.0.0” for IPv4, and “::” for IPv6.
- Valid ranges must be from lower (start address) to higher (end address).

- For IPv4 and IPv6, you can select an ID number between 1 and 5.
- IPv6 can register and select the range and the mask for each access ranges.
- IPv6 mask ranges between 1 - 128 can be selected.
- Up to five access ranges can be specified. The entry is invalid if the target number is omitted.
- You cannot send print jobs, or access Web Image Monitor and diprint from a restricted IP address.

appletalk

Use the "appletalk" command to view and configure AppleTalk parameters.

View settings

```
msh> appletalk
```

- [2] means "active" and [0] means "inactive".
- The default is [2].

Changing PAP timeout configuration

```
msh> appletalk ptimeout value > 0
```

- Timeout value becomes effective.

```
msh> appletalk ptimeout value = 0
```

- Timeout value becomes ineffective.

authfree

Use the "authfree" command to view and configure AuthFree parameters.

View settings

The following command displays the current AuthFree settings:

```
msh> authfree
```

- If print job authentication exclusion is not set, authentication exclusion control cannot be displayed.

IPv4 address settings

```
msh> authfree "ID" range_addr1 range_addr2
```

IPv6 address settings

```
msh> authfree "ID" range6_addr1 range6_addr2
```

IPv6 address mask configuration

```
msh> authfree "ID" mask6_addr1 masklen
```

Parallel/USB settings

```
msh> authfree [parallel | usb] [on|off]
```

- To enable authfree, set to on. To disable authfree, set to off. Always specify the interface.

Authentication exclusion control initialization

```
msh> authfree flush
```

autonet

Use the “autonet” command to configure AutoNet parameters.

View settings

The following command displays the current AutoNet settings:

```
msh> autonet
```

Configuration

You can configure AutoNet settings.

```
msh> autonet {on|off}
```

- {on} means “active” and {off} means “inactive”.

Current interface priority configuration display

```
msh> autonet priority
```

Interface priority configuration

```
msh> autonet priority “interface_name”
```

- You can give interface's AutoNet parameter priority.
- Priority settings are available when multiple interfaces are installed.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.

Interface	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11 interface

Note

- If an interface is not selected, the current interface connection settings remain in effect.
- For details about AutoNet, refer to autonet parameters.

bonjour

Use the “`bonjour`” command to display `bonjour`-related settings.

View settings

Bonjour settings are displayed.

```
msh> bonjour
```

Bonjour service name setting

You can specify the Bonjour service name.

```
msh> bonjour cname “computer name”
```

- The computer name can be entered using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- If you do not specify a character string, the current setting is displayed.

Bonjour Installation location information setting

You can enter information about the location where the printer is installed.

```
msh> bonjour location “location”
```

- Information about location can be entered using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.
- If you do not specify a character string, current setting is displayed.

Setting order of priority for each protocol

- `msh> bonjour dprint [0-99]`
- `msh> bonjour lpr [0-99]`
- `msh> bonjour ipp [0-99]`

You can specify the order of priority for “`dprint`”, “`lpr`”, and “`ipp`”. Smaller numbers indicate higher priority.

IP TTL setting

```
msh> bonjour ip ttl [1-255]
```

You can specify the IP TTL (the number of routers a packet can pass through).

- The default is 255.

Resetting the computer name and location information

You can reset the computer name and location information.

```
msh> bonjour clear {cname|location}
```

- `cname`: Reset the computer name. The default computer name will be displayed when the computer is restarted.
- `location`: Reset the location information. The previous location information will be deleted.

Interface configuration

```
msh> bonjour linklocal “interface_name”
```

- If you do not specify an interface, the Ethernet interface is selected automatically.
- If many types of interface are installed, configure the interface that communicates with linklocal address.
- If you do not specify an interface, the Ethernet interface is automatically selected.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.

Interface	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11 interface

Setting IPP-SSL printing

```
msh> bonjour ippport {ipp|ssl}
```

- If IPP-SSL Printing is set to ssl, the IPP port number will appear as 443, and IPP-SSL printing can be performed with higher security.
- If IPP-SSL Printing is set to ipp, the IPP port number will appear as 631. Port 631 is the port for normal IPP printing.

btconfig

Use the "btconfig" command to make Bluetooth settings.

View settings

Bluetooth settings are displayed.

```
msh> btconfig
```

Mode settings

You can set the Bluetooth operation mode to {private} or {public}.

```
msh> btconfig {private|public}
```

- The default is {public}.

devicename

Use the "devicename" command to display and change the printer name.

View settings

```
msh> devicename
```

Printer name configuration

```
msh> devicename name "string"
```

- Enter a printer name using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
- Set single names for each printer.

Printer name initialization

```
msh> devicename clear name
```

- Reset the printer name to its default.

dhcp

Use the “dhcp” command to configure DHCP settings.

View settings

The following command displays the current DHCP settings.

```
msh> dhcp
```

Configuration

You can configure DHCP.

```
msh> dhcp “interface_name” {on|off}
```

- Click {on} to enable dhcp. Click {off} to disable DHCP.
- If the DNS server address and domain name are obtained from DHCP, be sure to click {on}.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11 interface

Current interface priority configuration display

```
msh> dhcp priority
```

Interface priority configuration

```
msh> dhcp priority “interface_name”
```

- You can select which interface has DHCP parameter priority.
- Priority settings are available when multiple interfaces are installed.

DNS server address selection

```
msh> dhcp dnsaddr {dhcp|static}
```

- Specify whether to obtain the DNS server address from the DHCP server or use the address set by a user.

- To obtain the DNS server address from the DHCP server, specify "dhcp". To use the address set by a user, specify "static".

Domain name selection

```
msh> dhcp domainname {dhcp|static}
```

- Specify whether to obtain the domain name from the DNS server or use the domain name set by a user.
- To obtain the domain name from the DHCP server, specify "dhcp". To use the domain name set by a user, specify "static".

Reference

- p.317 "Using DHCP"

dhcp6

Use the "dhcp6" command to display or configure DHCPv6 settings.

View settings

The following command displays the current DHCPv6 settings.

```
msh> dhcp6
```

DHCPv6-lite configuration and display

```
msh> dhcp6 "interface_name" lite {on|off}
```

Viewing and specifying DNS server address selection (obtained from the dhcpv6 server/user specified value)

```
msh> dhcp6 dnsaddr {dhcp|static}
```

DUID(DHCP unique ID) deletion and display

```
msh> dhcp6 duid clear
```

Viewing and specifying the time required to re-obtain the parameter obtained from dhcpv6

```
msh> dhcp6 option lifetime [0-65535]
```

- It can be entered between 0 and 65535 minutes.
- The default is 60 minutes.
- If you specify "0", you cannot re-obtain the value.

diprint

The direct printing port enables direct printing from a network-connected computer.

Use the "diprint" command to change direct printing port settings.

View settings

The following command displays the current direct printing port settings:

```
msh> diprint
```

Example output:

```
port 9100
timeout=300(sec)
bidirect on
conn multi
apl async
```

- The “port” specifies the port number of the direct printing port.
- The “bidirect” setting indicates whether the direct printing port is bidirectional or not.

Setting timeout

```
msh> diprint timeout [30-5535]
```

- You can specify the timeout interval to use when the printer is expecting data from the network.
- The default is 300 seconds.
- This command functions in conjunction with the “lpr” command.

Specifying the number of concurrent connections

```
msh> diprint conn {multi|single}
```

- The above command specifies the number of concurrent diprint connections. Specify “multi” for multiple connections or “single” for a single connection.
- The default is “multi”.

dns

Use the “dns” command to configure or display DNS (Domain Name System) settings.

View settings

The following command displays current DNS settings:

```
msh> dns
```

IPv4 DNS server configuration

The following command enables or disables the IPv4 DNS server address:

```
msh> dns “ID” server “server address”
```

The following command displays a configuration using the IP address 192.168.15.16 on a DNS 1 server:

```
msh> dns 1 server 192.168.15.16
```


- You can register IPv4 DNS Server address.
- You can select an ID number between 1 and 3. You can select up to three ID numbers.
- You cannot use "255.255.255.255" as the DNS server address.

IPv6 DNS server configuration

The following command enables or disables the IPv4 DNS server address:

```
msh> dns "ID" server6 "server address"
```

- You can register IPv6 DNS Server address.
- The selectable ID number is between 1 and 3. You can select up to 3 ID.

Dynamic DNS function setting

```
msh> dns "interface_name" ddns {on|off}
```

- You can set the dynamic DNS function "active" or "inactive".
- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11 interface

Specifying the record overlap operation

```
msh> dns overlap {update|add}
```

- You can specify operations performed when records overlap.
- update: To delete old records and register new records.
- add: To add new records and store the old records.
- When CNAME overlaps, it is always changed, irrespective of settings.

CNAME registration

```
msh> dns cname {on|off}
```

- You can specify whether to register CNAME.
- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- The CNAME registered is the default name beginning with rnp. CNAME cannot be changed.

A records registration

```
msh> dns arecord {dhcp|own}
```

- dhcp: You can specify the method of registering an A record when the dynamic DNS function is enabled and DHCP is used.
- own: To register an A record using the printer as the DNS client.

The DNS server address and the domain name already designated are used for the registration.

Record updating interval settings

```
msh> dns interval [1-255]
```

- You can specify the interval after which records are updated when using the dynamic DNS function.
- The updating interval is specified hourly. It can be entered between 1 and 255 hours.
- The default is 24 hours.

resolv.conf display

```
msh> dns resolv
```

Specifying the protocol when asking names during dual stacking

```
msh> dns resolv protocol {ipv4|ipv6}
```

- Appears during dual stacking only.

4

domainname

Use the “domainname” command to display or configure the domain name settings.

You can configure the Ethernet interface or IEEE 802.11 interface.

View settings

The following command displays the current domain name:

```
msh> domainname
```

Interface domain configuration

```
msh> domainname “interface_name”
```

Setting the Domain Name

```
msh> domainname “interface_name” name “domain name”
```

- A domain name can be entered using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- The Ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11 interface will have the same domain name.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.

Interface	Interface set
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11 interface

Deleting the Domain Name

```
msh> domainname “interface_name” clear name
```

etherauth

Use the "etherauth" command to display or modify the authentication related parameters for Ethernet.

View settings

```
msh> etherauth
```

802.1x Configuration

```
msh> etherauth 8021x {on|off}
```

- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".

help

Use the "help" command to display the available command list and the procedures for using those commands.

Command list display

```
msh> help
```

Display of procedure for using commands

```
msh> help "command_name"
```

hostname

Use the "hostname" command to change the printer name.

View settings

```
msh> hostname
```

IPv4 Configuration

```
msh> hostname "interface_name" "printer_name"
```

- Enter the printer name using up to 63 alphanumeric characters.
- You cannot use a printer name beginning "RNP" (in either upper or lower case).
- The Ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11 interface will have the same printer name.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.
- If you do not specify an interface, the Ethernet interface is selected automatically.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11 interface

Initializing the printer name for each interface

```
msh>hostname "interface_name" clear name
```

ifconfig

Use the "ifconfig" command to view and configure TCP/IP (IP address, subnet mask, broadcast address, default gateway address) for the printer.

View settings

```
msh> ifconfig
```

IPv4 configuration

```
msh> ifconfig "interface_name" "parameter" "address"
```

- If you did not enter an interface name, it is automatically set to the Ethernet interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
ether	Ethernet Interface
wlan	IEEE 802.11 Interface

The following explains how to configure an IPv4 address 192.168.15.16 on Ethernet interface.

```
msh> ifconfig ether 192.168.15.16
```

IPv6 configuration

```
msh> ifconfig ether inet6 "interface_name" "printer_name"
```

The following explains how to configure a IPv6 address to 2001:DB8::100 with prefix length 64 on the Ethernet interface.

```
msh> ifconfig ether inet6 2001:DB8::100 64
```

Netmask configuration

```
msh> ifconfig "interface_name" netmask "address"
```

The following explains how to configure a subnet mask 255.255.255.0 on Ethernet interface.

```
msh> ifconfig ether netmask 255.255.255.0
```

Broadcast address configuration

```
msh> ifconfig "interface_name" broadcast "address"
```

Changing the interface

```
msh> ifconfig "interface" up
```

- When using the optional IEEE 802.11 interface unit, you can specify either Ethernet or IEEE 802.11 interface.

↓ Note

- To get the above addresses, contact your network administrator.
- Use the default configuration if you cannot obtain setting addresses.
- The IP address, subnet mask and broadcast address are the same as that for the Ethernet interface and IEEE 802.11 interface.
- TCP/IP configuration is the same for both Ethernet and IEEE 802.11 interface. If interfaces are changed, the new interface inherits the configuration.
- Use "0x" as the initial two letters of a hexadecimal address.

4

info

Use the "info" command to display printer information such as paper tray, output tray, and printer language.

Printer information display

```
msh> info
```

📖 Reference

- p.203 "Getting Printer Information over the Network"

ipp

Use the "ipp" command to view and configure IPP settings.

View settings

The following command displays the current IPP settings:

```
msh> ipp
```

IPP timeout configuration

Specify how many seconds the computer waits before canceling an interrupted print job. The time can be entered between 30 to 65535 seconds.

```
msh> ipp timeout [30-65535]
```

IPP user authorization configuration

Use IPP user authorization to restrict users to print with IPP. The default is "off".

```
msh> ipp auth {basic|digest|off}
```

- User authorization settings are "basic" and "digest".
- If user authorization is specified, register a user name. You can register up to 10 users.

IPP user name configuration

Configure IPP users according to the following messages:

```
msh> ipp user
```

The following message appears:

```
msh> Input user number (1 to 10):
```

Enter the number, user name, and password.

```
msh> IPP user name:user1
```

```
msh> IPP :*****
```

After configuring the settings, the following message appears:

User configuration changed.

ipsec

Use the "ipsec" command to view and configure IPsec settings.

View settings

The following command displays the current IPsec settings:

```
msh> ipsec
```

Note

- For details about displayed contents, see Security Reference.

ipv6

Use the "ipv6" command to display and configure IPv6 settings.

View Settings

```
msh> ipv6
```

IPv6 stateless address

```
msh> ipv6 stateless {on|off}
```

If "on" is selected, IPv6 requests information required for maintaining stateful connection to the router for as long as the printer power is turned on. This setting allows information from the router to be obtained constantly, and periodically refreshes the effective period of the stateless address.

logout

Use the "logout" command to save the changes and quit telnet.

Quit telnet

```
msh> logout
```

A confirmation message appears.

```
{yes|no|return}
```

Enter [yes], [no] or [return] by typing the word, and then press the [Enter] key.

To save the changes and quit telnet, enter [yes].

To discard the changes and quit telnet, enter [no].

To continue making changes, enter [return].

lpr**4**

Use the “lpr” command to view and configure LPR settings.

View Settings

```
msh> lpr
```

Checking host name when deleting the job

```
msh> lpr chkhost {on|off}
```

- The default is “on”.

If “on” is selected, you can delete print jobs only from the IP address of the host that sent the print job.

If LPR is disabled, you can also delete print jobs sent from IP addresses other than that of the host.

Printer Error Detection Function

```
msh> lpr prnerrchk {on|off}
```

- The default is “off”.

If you set this to “on”, the printer stops receiving data and will wait until the error is resolved before continuing processing a job.

netware

Use the “netware” command to view and configure the NetWare settings such as the print server name or file server name.

NetWare Printer Server Names

```
msh> netware pnamecharacter string
```

- Enter the NetWare print server name using up to 47 characters.

NetWare File Server Names

```
msh> netware fname character string
```

- Enter the NetWare file server name using up to 47 characters.

Encap type

```
msh> netware encap {802.3|802.2|snap|ethernet2|auto}
```

Remote Printer Number

```
msh> netware rnum [0-254]
```

- The default is 0.

Timeout

```
msh> netware timeout [3-255]
```

- The default is 15.

Printer server mode

```
msh> netware mode pserver
```

```
msh> netware mode ps
```

Remote printer mode

```
msh> netware mode rprinter
```

```
msh> netware mode rp
```

NDS context name

```
msh> netware context "character string"
```

SAP interval

```
msh> netware "sap_interval[0-3600]"
```

It can be entered between 0 and 3600 seconds.

Setting login mode for file server

```
msh> netware login server
```

Setting login mode for NDS tree

```
msh> netware login tree
```

Setting login mode for NDS tree name

```
msh> netware tree "NDS tree name"
```

File transfer protocol

```
msh> netware trans {ipv4pri|ipxpri|ipv4|ipx}
```

- If you do not specify the protocol, the current setting is displayed.

Protocol	Set Protocol
ipv4pri	IPv4+IPX(IPv4)
ipxpri	IPv4+IPX(IPX)
ipv4	IPv4

Protocol	Set Protocol
ipx	IPX

passwd

Use the “passwd” command to change the remote maintenance password.

Changing the password

```
msh> passwd
```

- Enter the current password.
- Enter the new password.
- Renter the new password to confirm it.

Changing the password of the administrators using the Supervisor

```
msh> passwd {Administrator ID}
```

- Enter the new password.
- Renter the new password to confirm it.

Note

- Be sure not to forget or lose the password.
- The password can be entered using up to 32 alphanumeric characters are case-sensitive. For example, “R” is not the same as “r”.

pathmtu

Use the “pathmtu” command to display and configure the PathMTU Discovery service function.

View settings

```
msh> pathmtu
```

Configuration

```
msh> pathmtu {on|off}
```

- The default is “on”.
- If the MTU size of the sent data is larger than the router's MTU, the router will declare it impassable, and communication will fail. If this happens, selecting the “pathmtu” to “on” optimizes the MTU size and prevents data output failure.
- Depending on the environment, information might not be obtained from the router, and communication will fail. If this happens, select the “pathmtu” to “off”.

prnlog

Use the “prnlog” command to obtain printer log information.

Print logs display

```
msh> prnlog
```

- Display previous print jobs.

```
msh> prnlog “ID Number”
```

- Specify the ID number of the displayed print log information to display additional details about a print job.

Reference

- p.214 “Understanding the Displayed Information”

route

Use the “route” command to view and control the routing table.

Specified route information display

```
msh> route get “destination”
```

- Specify the IPv4 address to destination.
“0.0.0.0” cannot be specified as destination address.

Enabling/disabling specified IPv4 destination

```
msh> route active {host|net} “destination” {on|off}
```

- If you do not specify {host|net}, the host setting is automatically selected.

Adding IPv4 Routing Table

```
msh> route add {host|net} “destination” “gateway”
```

- Adds a host or network route to “destination”, and a gateway address to “gateway” in the table.
- Specify the IPv4 address to destination and gateway.
- If you do not specify {host|net}, the host setting is selected automatically.
- You cannot specify “0.0.0.0” as the destination address.

Setting the Default IPv4 Gateway

```
msh> route add default “gateway”
```

Deleting specified IPv4 destination from Routing Table

```
msh> route delete {host|net} “destination”
```

- If you do not specify {host|net}, the host setting is automatically selected.
- IPv4 address of destination can be specified.

Setting IPv6 Default Gateway

```
msh> route add6 default gateway
```

Adding a specified IPv6 destination to Routing Table

```
msh> route add6 "destination" "prefixlen[1-128]" "gateway"
```

- Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.
- If the prefix of the address is between 1 and 127, the network is selected. If the prefix of the address is 128, the host is selected.
- You cannot register a record that has the same destination and prefix as a registered record.
- You cannot register a record that uses "0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000:0000" as its destination.

Deleting a specified IPv6 destination from Routing Table

```
msh> route delete6 "destination" "prefixlen"
```

- Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.

Display information about a specified IPv6 route information

```
msh> route get6 "destination"
```

- Specify the IPv6 address to destination and gateway.

Enabling/disabling a specified IPv6 destination

```
msh> route active6 "destination" "prefixlen[1-128]" {on|off}
```

Route initialization

```
msh> route flush
```



Note

- The maximum number of IPv4 routing tables is 16.
- The maximum number of IPv6 routing tables is 2.
- Set a gateway address when communicating with devices on an external network.
- The same gateway address is shared by all interfaces.
- "Prefixlen" is a number between 1 and 128.

rhpp

Use the "rhpp" command to view and configure RHPP settings.

View settings

```
msh> rhpp
```

Changing rhpp port number

```
msh> rhpp [1024-65535]
```

- The default is 59100.

Setting timeout

```
msh> rhpp timeout [30-65535]
```

- The default is 300 seconds.

Note

- “RHPP” is an abbreviation of “Reliability Host Printing Protocol”, which is a manufacturer-original printing protocol.

set

4

Use the “set” command to set the protocol information display “active” or “inactive”.

View settings

The following command displays protocol information (active/inactive).

```
msh> set ipv4
```

```
msh> set ipv6
```

```
msh> set ipsec
```

```
msh> set appletalk
```

```
msh> set netware
```

```
msh> set smb
```

```
msh> set protocol
```

- When protocol is specified, information about TCP/IP, AppleTalk, NetWare and SMB appears.

```
msh> set lpr
```

```
msh> set lpr6
```

```
msh> set ftp
```

```
msh> set ftp6
```

```
msh> set rsh
```

```
msh> set rsh6
```

```
msh> set diprint
```

```
msh> set diprint6
```

```
msh> set web
```

```
msh> set snmp
```

```
msh> set ssl
```

```
msh> set ssl6
```

```
msh> set nrs
```

```
msh> set rfu
msh> set rfu6
msh> set ipp
msh> set ipp6
msh> set http
msh> set http6
msh> set bonjour
msh> set bonjour6
msh> set nbt
msh> set ssdp
msh> set ssh
msh> set sftp
msh> set sftp6
msh> set wsdev
msh> set wsdev6
msh> set wsprn
msh> set wsscn
msh> set rhpp
msh> set rhpp6
```

Configuration

- Enter “up” to enable protocol, and enter “down” to disable protocol.

You can set the protocol to “active” or “inactive”.

```
msh> set ipv4 {up|down}
```

- If you disable IPv4, you cannot use remote access after logging off. If you did this by mistake, you can use the control panel to enable remote access via IPv4.
- Disabling IPv4 also disables lpr, ftp, rsh, diprint, web, snmp, ssl, ipp, http, bonjour, wsdev, and sftp.

```
msh> set ipv6 {up|down}
```

- If you disable IPv6, you cannot use remote access after logging off. If you did this by mistake, you can use the control panel to enable remote access via IPv6.
- Disabling IPv6 also disables lpr6, ftp6, rsh6, diprint6, ssl6, ipp6, http6, bonjour6, wsdev6, and sftp6.

```
msh> set ipsec {up|down}
```

```
msh> set appletalk {up|down}
```

```

msh> set netware {up|down}
msh> set smb {up|down}
msh> set lpr {up|down}
msh> set lpr6 {up|down}
msh> set ftp {up|down}
msh> set ftp6 {up|down}
msh> set rsh {up|down}
msh> set rsh6 {up|down}
msh> set diprint {up|down}
msh> set diprint6 {up|down}
msh> set web {up|down}
msh> set snmp {up|down}
msh> set ssl {up|down}
msh> set ssl6 {up|down}

```

- If Secured Sockets Layer (SSL, an encryption protocol) function is not available for the printer, you cannot use the function by enabling it.

```

msh> set nrs {up|down}
msh> set rfu {up|down}
msh> set rfu6 {up|down}
msh> set ipp {up|down}
msh> set ipp6 {up|down}
msh> set http {up|down}
msh> set http6 {up|down}
msh> set bonjour {up|down}
msh> set bonjour6 {up|down}
msh> set ssh {up|down}
msh> set ssdp {up|down}
msh> set nbt {up|down}
msh> set sftp {up|down}
msh> set sftp6 {up|down}
msh> set wsdev {up|down}
msh> set wsdev6 {up|down}

```

- If “wsdev” and “wsdev6” are enabled simultaneously, both appear as “up” on the protocol information display, but both use IPv4 for WSD (Device), WSD (Printer) and WSD (Scanner).

```
msh> set wsprn {up|down}
msh> set wsscn {up|down}
msh> set rhpp {up|down}
msh> set rhpp6 {up|down}
```

show

Use the “show” command to display network interface board configuration settings.

View settings

```
msh> show
```

- If “-p” is added, you can view settings one by one.

Reference

- p.214 "Understanding the Displayed Information"

slp

Use the “slp” command to view and configure SLP settings.

```
msh> slp ttl “ttl_val[1-255]”
```

- You can search the NetWare server using SLP in the PureIP environment of NetWare 5/5.1. Using the “slp” command, you can configure the value of TTL which can be used by SLP multicast packet.
- The default value of TTL is 1. A search is executed only within a local segment. If the router does not support multicast, the settings are not available even if the TTL value is increased.
- The acceptable TTL value is between 1 and 255.

smb

Use the “smb” command to configure or delete the computer or workgroup name for SMB.

Computer name settings

```
msh> smb comp “computer name”
```

- Set computer name using up to 15 characters.
- Names beginning with “RNP” or “rnp” cannot be entered.

Working group name settings

```
msh> smb group “work group name”
```

- Set workgroup name using up to 15 characters.

Comment settings

```
msh> smb comment "comment"
```

- Set comment using up to 31 characters.

Notify print job completion

```
msh> smb notif {on|off}
```

- To notify print job completion, specify "on". Otherwise, specify "off".

Deleting computer name

```
msh> smb clear comp
```

Deleting group name

```
msh> smb clear group
```

Deleting comment

```
msh> smb clear comment
```

View protocol

```
msh> smb protocol
```

snmp

Use the "snmp" command to display and edit SNMP configuration settings such as the community name.

View settings

```
msh> snmp
```

- Default access settings 1 is as follows:
Community name:public
IPv4 address:0.0.0.0
IPv6 address::
IPX address:00000000:000000000000
Access type:read-only
Effective Protocol:IPv4/IPv6/IPX
- Default access settings 2 is as follows:
Community name:admin
IPv4 address:0.0.0.0
IPv6 address::
IPX address:00000000:000000000000
Access type:read-write
Effective Protocol:IPv4/IPv6/IPX

- If “-p” is added, you can view settings one by one.
- To display the current community, specify its registration number.

Display

```
msh> snmp ?
```

Community name configuration

```
msh> snmp “number” name “community_name”
```

- You can configure ten SNMP access settings numbered 1-10.
- The printer cannot be accessed from SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin or SmartDeviceMonitor for Client if “public” is not registered in numbers 1-10. When changing the community name, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin and SNMP Setup Tool to correspond with printer settings.
- The community name can be entered using up to 15 characters.

Deleting community name

```
msh> snmp “number” clear name
```

Access type configuration

```
msh> snmp “number” type “access_type”
```

Access type	Type of access permission
no	not accessible
read	read only
write	read and write
trap	user is notified of trapmessages

Protocol configuration

Use the following command to set protocols “active” or “inactive”: If you set a protocol “inactive”, all access settings for that protocol are disabled.

```
msh> snmp {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}
```

- Specify “ipv4” for IPv4, “ipv6” for IPv6, or “ipx” for IPX/SPX.
- {on} means “active” and {off} means “inactive”.
- All protocols cannot be turned off concurrently.

Configuration of protocol for each registration number

```
msh> snmp “number” active {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}
```

- To change the protocol of access settings, use the following command. However, if you have disabled a protocol with the above command, activating it here has no effect.

Access configuration

```
msh> snmp "number" {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} "address"
```

- You can configure a host address according to the protocol used.
- The network interface board accepts requests only from hosts that have IPv4, IPv6, and IPX addresses with access types of "read-only" or "read-write". Enter "0" to have network interface board accept requests from any host without requiring a specific type of access.
- Enter a host address to deliver "trap" access type information to.
- To specify IPv4 or IPv6, enter "ipv4" or "ipv6" followed by a space, and then the IPv4 or IPv6 address.
- To specify IPX/SPX, enter "ipx" followed by a space, the IPX address followed by a decimal, and then the MAC address of the network interface board.

sysLocation configuration

```
msh> snmp location
```

Deleting sysLocation

```
msh> snmp clear location
```

sysContact setting

```
msh> snmp contact
```

Deleting sysContact

```
msh> snmp clear contact
```

SNMP v1v2 function configuration

```
msh> snmp v1v2 {on|off}
```

- Specify "on" to enable, and "off" to disable.

SNMP v3 function configuration

```
msh> snmp v3 {on|off}
```

- Specify "on" to enable, and "off" to disable.

SNMP TRAP configuration

```
msh> snmp trap{v1|v2|v3} {on|off}
```

- Specify "on" to enable, and "off" to disable.

Remote Configuration Authorization configuration

```
msh> snmp remote {on|off}
```

- Specify "on" to enable, and "off" to disable the SNMP v1v2 setting.

SNMP v3 TRAP configuration display

```
msh> snmp v3trap
```

```
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5]
```

- If a number from 1 to 5 is entered, settings are displayed for that number only.

Configuring a sending address for SNMP v3 TRAP

```
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5] {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} "address"
```

Configuring a sending protocol for SNMP v3 TRAP

```
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5] active {ipv4|ipv6|ipx} {on|off}
```

Configuring a user account for SNMP v3 TRAP

```
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5] account "account_name"
```

- Enter an account name using up to 32 alphanumeric characters.

Deleting an SNMP v3 TRAP user account

```
msh> snmp v3trap [1-5] clear account
```

Configuring an SNMP v3 encryption algorithm

```
msh> snmp v3auth {md5|sha1}
```

Configuring SNMP v3 encryption

```
msh> snmp v3priv {auto|on}
```

- Set "auto" for automatic encryption configuration.
- If you select "on", plain-text communication becomes impossible - only encrypted communication is possible.

Note

- "Encrypted communication" means an encrypted password is set on the machine.

snmp

The printer clock can be synchronized with a NTP server clock using Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP). Use the "snmp" command to change SNTP settings.

View settings

```
msh> snmp
```

NTP IPv4 server address configuration

You can specify the IPv4 address of the NTP server.

```
msh> snmp server "IPv4_address"
```

NTP hostname configuration

You can specify the hostname of the NTP server.

```
msh> snmp server "hostname"
```

Deleting NTP server configuration

```
msh> snmp server clear
```

Interval configuration

```
msh> sntp interval "polling_time"
```

- You can specify the interval at which the printer synchronizes with the operator-specified NTP server. The default is 60 minutes.
- The interval can be entered from 0, or between 15 and 10,080 minutes.
- If you set 0, the printer synchronizes with the NTP server only when you turn the printer on. After that, the printer does not synchronize with the NTP server.

Time-zone configuration

```
msh> sntp timezone "±hour_time"
```

- You can specify the time difference between the printer clock and NTP server clock. The values are between -12:00 and +13:00.

Note

- You can only select either the address or host name for the ntp server.

spoolsw

Use the "spoolsw" command to view and configure Job Spool settings.

You can only specify diprint, trap, lpr, ipp, ftp, sftp, wsd (printer), and smb (TCP/IP) protocol.

- The "spoolsw" command for configuring Job Spool settings is available only when the optional hard disk is installed.

View settings

The Job Spool setting appears.

```
msh> spoolsw
```

Job Spool setting

```
msh> spoolsw spool {on|off}
```

- Specify "on" to enable Job Spool, or "off" to disable it.

Resetting Job spool setting

```
msh> spoolsw clear job {on|off}
```

- When the printer power is cut during job spooling, this determines whether to reprint the spooled job.

Protocol configuration

```
msh> spoolsw diprint {on|off}
```

```
msh> spoolsw lpr {on|off}
```

```
msh> spoolsw ipp {on|off}
```

```
msh> spoolsw smb {on|off}
```

```
msh> spoolsw ftp {on|off}
msh> spoolsw sftp {on|off}
msh> spoolsw wsprn {on|off}
```

ssdp

Use the “ssdp” command to view and configure SSDP settings.

View settings

```
msh> ssdp
```

Setting effective time

```
msh> ssdp profile [1801-86400]
```

The default is 10800 seconds.

Advertise packet TTL settings

```
msh> ssdp ttl [1-255]
```

The default is 4.

ssh

Use the “ssh” command to view and configure SSH settings.

View settings

```
msh> ssh
```

Data compression communication settings

```
msh> ssh compression {on|off}
```

The default is “on”.

SSH/SFTP communication port setting

```
msh> ssh port [22, 1024-65535]
```

The default is 22.

SSH/SFTP communication timeout setting

```
msh> ssh timeout [0-65535]
```

The default is 300.

SSH/SFTP communication login timeout setting

```
msh> ssh logintimeout [0-65535]
```

The default is 300.

Setting an open key for SSH/SFTP

```
msh> ssh genkey {512|768|1024} "character string"
```

Create an open key for SSH/SFTP communication.

Usable characters are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes) other than "0".

The default key length is 1024, and the character string is blank.

If you do not specify this parameter, an open key with the default value will be created.

Deleting open key for ssh/sftp communication

```
msh> ssh delkey
```

Note

- If you do not specify a character string, current setting is displayed.
- ssh can be used only with sftp.

4

status

Use the "status" command to display the printer status.

view messages

```
msh> status
```

Reference

- p.203 "Getting Printer Information over the Network"

syslog

Use the "syslog" command to display the information stored in the printer's system log.

View messages

```
msh> syslog
```

Reference

- p.226 "Message List"

upnp

Use the "upnp" command to display and configure the universal plug and play.

Public URL display

```
msh> upnp url
```

Public URL configuration

```
msh> upnp url "string"
```

- Enter the URL string in the character string.

web

Use the "web" command to display and configure parameters on Web Image Monitor.

View Settings

```
msh> web
```

URL Configuration

You can set URLs linked by clicking [URL] on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web "ID" url http:// "The URL or IP address you want to register"/
```

Specify "1" or "2" for ID as the number corresponding to the URL. Up to two URLs can be registered and specified.

Resetting URLs registered as link destinations

```
msh> web "ID" clear url
```

Specify "1" or "2" for ID as the corresponding number to the URL.

Link name configuration

You can enter the name for URL that appears on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web "ID" name "Name you want to display"
```

Specify "1" or "2" for ID the corresponding number to the link name.

Resetting URL names registered as link destinations

```
msh> web "ID" clear name
```

Specify "1" or "2" for ID as the number corresponding to the link name.

Help URL Configuration

You can set URLs linked by clicking "?" on Web Image Monitor.

```
msh> web help http:// "Help URL or IP address" /help/
```

Resetting Help URL

```
msh> web clear help
```

wiconfig

Use the "wiconfig" command to make settings for IEEE 802.11.

View settings

msh> wiconfig

View IEEE 802.11 settings

msh> wiconfig cardinfo

- If IEEE 802.11 is not working correctly, its information is not displayed.

Configuration

msh> wiconfig "parameter"

Parameter	Value configured
mode {ap 802.11ad hoc}	You can set the infrastructure mode (ap) or the 802.11 Ad hoc mode (802.11ad hoc). The default is the infrastructure mode.
ssid "ID value"	You can specify an SSID in infrastructure mode. The characters you can enter in the SSID string are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (32 bytes). If you do not specify a character string, the machine will connect to the nearest access point. The default SSID is blank.
channel frequency "channel no."	In 802.11 ad hoc mode, you can select a channel between 1 and 14, or 36, 40, 44, or 48. Be sure to set the same channel for all ports that will transmit and receive data. The default is "11".
key "key value" val [1 2 3 4]	You can specify the WEP key when entering in hexadecimal. With a 64-bit WEP, you can use 10 digit hexadecimal. With a 128-bit WEP, you can use 26 digit hexadecimal. Up to four WEP keys can be registered. Specify the number to be registered with "val". When a WEP is specified by key, the WEP specified by key phrase is overwritten. To use this function, set the same key number and WEP key for all ports that transmit data to each other. Put "0x" on the front of WEP key.

Parameter	Value configured
	You can omit the numbers with "val". The key number is set to 1 when making these omissions. The default is blank.
keyphrase "phrase" val [1 2 3 4]	You can specify the WEP key when entering in ASCII. With a 64-bit WEP, you can use 5 digit hexadecimals. With a 128-bit WEP, you can use 13 digit hexadecimals. Up to four WEP keys can be registered. Specify the number to be registered with "val". When a WEP is specified by key phrase, the WEP specified by key is overwritten. To use this function, set the same key number and WEP key for all ports that transmit data to each other. You can omit the numbers with "val". The key number is set to 1 when making these omissions. The default is blank.
encval [1 2 3 4]	You can specify which of the four WEP keys is used for packet encoding. "1" is set if a number is not specified.
wepauth {open shared}	You can set an authorization mode when using WEP. The specified value and authorized mode are as follows: open: open system authorized (default) shared: shared key authorized rate
security {none wep wpa}	You can specify the security mode. none: No encryption (default) wep: WEP encryption wpa: WPA encryption
wpaenc {tkip ccmp}	You can specify WPA encryption key when using WPA encryption. tkip: TKIP ccmp: CCMP (AES) (default)

Parameter	Value configured
wpaauth {wpapsk wpa wpa2psk wpa2}	You can specify the WPA authentication mode when using WPA encryption. wpapsk: WPA-PSK authentication (default) wpa: WPA authentication wpa2psk: WPA2-PSK authentication wpa2: WPA2 authentication
psk "character string"	You can specify the Pre-Shared key. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (8 to 63 bytes). The default is blank.
eap {tls ttls leap peap} {chap mschap mschapv2 pap md5 tls}	You can specify the EAP authentication type. tls: EAP-TLS (default) ttls: EAP-TTLS leap: LEAP peap: PEAP chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, md5, or tls are settings for the phase 2 method, and must be set when using EAP-TTLS or PEAP. Do not make these settings when using other EAP authentication types. If you select EAP-TTLS, you can select chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, or md5. If you select PEAP, you can select mschapv2 or tls.
username "character string"	You can specify the login user name for the Radius server. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes). The default is blank.
username2 "character string"	You can specify the phase 2 username for EAP-TTLS/PEAP phase 2 authentication. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes).

Parameter	Value configured
	The default is blank.
domain "character string"	You can specify the login domain name for the Radius server. The characters you can enter are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes), but not "@" or "\". The default is blank.
password "character string"	You can specify the login for the Radius server. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (128 bytes). The default is blank.
svrcert {on off}	You can set the server certificate. The default is "off".
imca {on off}	You can enable or disable the certificate when the intermediate certificate authority is present. The default is "off".
srvid "character string"	You can set the server ID and subdomain of the certificate server. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (128 bytes). The default is blank.
connectinfo	Obtains connection information.
clear {a each command all}	Returns the selected setting to its default value. If you specify "all", all settings will be restored to their default values.
miccheck {on off}	You can enable or disable the MIC check function. The default setting is "On" (enabled). If you specify "Off", you cannot perform MIC checks. We recommend you specify "On" for the MIC check function when using this machine.

wins

Use the "wins" command to configure WINS server settings.

View settings

msh> wins

- If the IPv4 address obtained from DHCP differs from the WINS IPv4 address, the DHCP address is the valid address.

Configuration

msh> wins "interface_name" {on|off}

- {on} means "active" and {off} means "inactive".
- Be sure to specify the interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.

4

Interface name	Interface configured
Ether	Ethernet interface
Wlan	IEEE 802.11 interface

Address configuration

Use the following command to configure a WINS server IP address:

wins "interface_name" {primary|secondary} "IP address"

- Use the "primary" command to configure a primary WINS server IP address.
- Use the "secondary" command to configure a secondary WINS server IP address.
- Do not use "255.255.255.255" as the IP address.

NBT (NetBIOS over TCP/IP) Scope ID Selection

You can specify the NBT scope ID.

msh> wins "interface_name" scope "scope ID"

- The scope ID can be entered using up to 31 alphanumeric characters.
- Be sure to specify the interface.
- wlan can be specified only when the IEEE 802.11 interface is installed.

Interface name	Interface configured
Ether	Ethernet interface
Wlan	IEEE 802.11 interface

wsmfp

Use the “wsmfp” command to view and configure WSD (Device), WSD (Printer) and WSD (Scanner) settings.

View settings

```
msh> wsmfp
```

Comment settings

```
msh> wsmfp comments “comment”
```

- If you do not specify a comment, current setting is displayed.

Location configuration

```
msh> wsmfp location “location”
```

- If you do not specify a comment, current setting is displayed.

Presentation URL configuration

```
msh> wsmfp url “URL”
```

- Enter the URL string in the “URL”.

WSD (Device) TCP port configuration

```
msh> wsmfp devport “port_number”
```

- The Default is 53000.

WSD (Printer) TCP port configuration

```
msh> wsmfp prnport “port_number”
```

- The Default is 53001.

WSD (Printer) Timeout configuration

```
msh> wsmfp prntimeout [30-65535]
```

- The default is 900 seconds.

WSD (Scanner) TCP port configuration

```
msh> wsmfp scnport “port_number”
```

- The Default is 53002.

Comment initialization

```
msh> wsmfp clear comments
```

Location initialization

```
msh> wsmfp clear location
```

Presentation URL initialization

```
msh> wsmfp clear url
```

8021x

Use the "8021x" command to display IEEE 802.1x related information.

View settings

msh> 8021x

Configuration

msh> 8021x "parameter"

Parameter	Value configured
eap {tls ttls leap peap} {chap mschap mschapv2 pap md5 tls}	You can specify the EAP authentication type. tls: EAP-TLS (default) ttls: EAP-TTLS leap: LEAP peap: PEAP chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, md5, or tls are settings for the phase 2 method, and must be set when using EAP-TTLS or PEAP. Do not make these settings when using other EAP authentication types. If you select EAP-TTLS, you can select chap, mschap, mschapv2, pap, or md5. If you select PEAP, you can select mschapv2 or tls.
Username "character string"	You can specify the login user name for the Radius server. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes). The default is blank.
Username2 "character string"	You can specify the phase 2 username for EAP-TTLS/PEAP phase 2 authentication. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes). The default is blank.
domain "character string"	You can specify the login domain name for the Radius server.

Parameter	Value configured
	The characters you can enter are ASCII 0x20-0x7e (31 bytes), but not "@" or "\". The default is blank.
password "character string"	You can specify the login for the Radius server. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (128 bytes). The default is blank.
svrcert {on off}	You can set the server certificate. The default is "off".
imca {on off}	You can enable or disable the certificate when the intermediate certificate authority is present. The default is "off".
srvid "character string"	You can set the server ID and subdomain of the certificate server. Usable characters: ASCII 0x20-0x7e (128 bytes). The default is blank.
subdomain	You can specify permissions for the subdomain.
clear {a each command all}	Returns the selected setting to its default value. If you specify "all", all settings will be restored to their default values. However, IEEE 802.1x Auth. status (enable or disable) for Ethernet and wireless LAN will not be initialized.

SNMP

Using the SNMP manager, you can get information about the machine.

The SNMP agent operating on UDP and IPX is incorporated into the built-in Ethernet board and optional IEEE 802.11 interface unit of this machine.

This machine also supports SNMPv3, which increases user authentication, data encryption, and access control security.

To encrypt communication by SNMPv3, you must specify the machine's encrypted password.

★ Important

- **If you changed the machine's community name, change the configuration of the connected computer accordingly, using SNMP Setup Tool. For details, see SNMP Setup Tool Help.**

The default community names are [public] and [admin]. You can get MIB information using these community names.

Start SNMP Setup Tool

- Windows 2000:
Click the [Start] button.
Point to [SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin] on the [Programs] menu.
Click [SNMP Setup Tool].
- Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008
Click the [Start] button.
Point to [SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin] on the [All Programs] menu.
Click [SNMP Setup Tool].

Getting Printer Information over the Network

This section explains details of each item displayed in the printer status and information.

Current Printer Status

This section explains how you can check the machine's status and the items displayed. Depending on the options installed on the machine, some items might not be displayed.

- UNIX: Use the "lpq" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- mshell: Use the "status" command.

Messages	Description
Access Restricted	The job was canceled because user have no authority.
Access Restricted (Classi-Code)	The job was canceled because no classification code is specified.
Add staples (Booklet: Back)	The staple of booklet finisher (back) is exhausted.
Add staples (Booklet: Both)	The staple of booklet finisher is exhausted.
Add staples (Booklet: Front)	The staple of booklet finisher (front) is exhausted.
Adjusting...	The machine is initializing or calibrating.
Call Service Center	There is a malfunction in the machine.
Canceled	The job is reset.
Canceling Job...	The job is being reset.
Cannot Eject Original Through	The original cannot be ejected.
Cannot multi-install: SD Card	The SD card has been configured using another device.
Card/Counter not inserted	The machine is waiting for prepaid card or key.
Coin or amount not inserted	The machine is waiting for coin to be inserted.
Coin/Key Counter not inserted	The machine is waiting for coin or key counter.
Configuring...	Setting is being changed.

Messages	Description
Cooling Down Fusing Unit...	The fusing unit is cooling down.
Cover Open: ADF	The document feeder is open.
Cover Open: Duplex Unit	The cover of the duplex unit is open.
Cover Open: Finisher	The cover of Finisher is open.
Cover Open: Finisher Front	The front cover of Finisher is open.
Cover Open: Front Cover	The front cover is open.
Cover Open: Lower Right Cover	The lower right cover is open.
Cover Open: Upper Right Cover	The upper right cover is open.
Current Job Suspended	The current job is suspended.
Data Size Error	The data size error occurred.
Empty: Black Toner	The black toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Cyan Toner	The cyan toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Magenta Toner	The magenta toner cartridge is almost empty.
Empty: Yellow Toner	The yellow toner cartridge is almost empty.
Energy Saver Mode	The machine is in Energy Saver Mode.
Envelope Setting Error: None	Printing paper type other than envelope is instructed when B2 lever is down.
Envelope Setting Error: Others	Printing envelope is instructed when B2 lever is down.
Error	An error has occurred.
Error: Address Book	An error has occurred in the data of the address book.
Error: Command Transmission	An error has occurred in the machine.
Error: DIMM Value	A memory error occurred.
Error: Ethernet Board	An Ethernet board error has occurred.
Error: HDD Board	A hard disk drive board error has occurred.

Messages	Description
Error: Media Link Board	An error has occurred on the File Format Converter.
Error: Memory Switch	A memory switch error has occurred.
Error: Optional Font	An error has occurred in the font file of the machine.
Error: Optional RAM	An error has occurred in the optional memory unit.
Error: Parallel I/F Board	An error has occurred in the parallel interface.
Error: PDL	An error has occurred in the page description language.
Error: Rem. Certificate Renewal	An error has occurred in the remote server renewal.
Error: USB Board	An error has occurred in the USB interface board.
Error: USB Interface	An error has occurred in the USB interface.
Error: Wireless Board	An error has occurred in the wireless interface board or IEEE 802.11 interface unit.
Error: Wireless Card	Wireless card is not inserted during start up, or the IEEE 802.11 interface unit or the wireless card is taken out after start up.
Exceed Booklet Stapling Limit	The printing has exceeded the stapling limit of the booklet finisher.
Exceed Stapling Limit	The printing has exceeded the stapling limit.
Full: Finisher	Finisher tray is full.
Full: Finisher Booklet Tray	Booklet tray of Finisher is full.
Full: Finisher Shift Tray	Shift tray of Finisher is full.
Full: Finisher Shift Tray 1, 2	The shift tray 1 and 2 of Finisher are full.
Full: Finisher Upper Tray	Finisher's upper tray is full.
Full: Hole Punch Receptacle	Punch Chip receptacle for hole punch is full.
Full: Internal Tray 1	The internal tray is full.
Full: Log Data Capacity	The log data capacity is full.
Full: Waste Toner	The waste toner is full.

Messages	Description
Full: Waste Toner Bottle 2	The waste toner bottle 2 is full.
Hex Dump Mode	It is a hex dump mode.
Immed. Trans. not connected	It did not connect directly with the other party of the transmission.
Immediate Transmission Failed	An error has occurred while transmitting directly.
In Use: Copier	The copier is being used.
In Use: Fax	The fax is being used.
In Use: Finisher	Another function is using Finisher.
In Use: Input Tray	Another function is using the input tray.
In Use: Staple Unit	Another function is using the staple unit.
Independent-supplier Toner	Toner that is not recommended is set.
Jobs Suspended	All jobs are suspended.
Key Card not inserted	The machine is waiting for key card to be inserted.
Key Card/Counter not inserted	The machine is waiting for key card or key counter to be inserted.
Key Counter not inserted	The machine is waiting for key counter to be left in it.
Low: Yellow Toner	The yellow toner cartridge is not set correctly, or toner is almost running out.
Malfunction: Booklet Processor	There is a problem with booklet finisher.
Malfunction: Bypass Tray	There is a problem with the bypass tray.
Malfunction: Ext. Charge Unit	There is a problem with the external charge unit.
Malfunction: Finisher	There is a problem with the finisher.
Malfunction: Output Tray	There is a problem with the output tray.
Malfunction: Punch Unit	There is a problem with the punch unit.
Malfunction: Staple Unit	There is a problem with the staple unit.

Messages	Description
Malfunction: Tray 1	There is a problem with tray 1.
Malfunction: Tray 2	There is a problem with tray 2.
Malfunction: Tray 3	There is a problem with tray 3.
Malfunction: Tray 4	There is a problem with tray 4.
Memory Low: Copy	Memory shortage has occurred while the copy was operating.
Mismatch: Paper Size and Type	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected size and type.
Mismatch: Paper Type	Indicated paper tray does not contain paper of selected type.
Near Replacing: Black PCU	Prepare the new black photoconductor unit.
Near Replacing: Color Dev. Unit	Prepare the new color development unit.
Near Replacing: Color PCU	Prepare the new color photoconductor unit.
Near Replacing: Develop. Unit C	Prepare the new development unit (cyan).
Near Replacing: Develop. Unit K	Prepare the new development unit (black).
Near Replacing: Develop. Unit M	Prepare the new development unit (magenta).
Near Replacing: Develop. Unit Y	Prepare the new development unit (yellow).
Nearly Full: Log Data Capacity	The log is nearing data capacity
Nearly Full: Waste Toner	Waste toner bottle is nearly full.
Nearly Full: Waste Toner Bottle2	Waste toner bottle 2 is nearly full.
Need more Staples	Stapler has almost run out of staples.
No Paper: Interposer Tray	There is no paper in interposer unit.
No Paper: Selected Tray	There is no paper in specified tray.
No Paper: Tray 1	There is no paper in tray 1.
No Paper: Tray 2	There is no paper in tray 2.
No Paper: Tray 3	There is no paper in tray 3.

Messages	Description
No Paper: Tray 4	There is no paper in tray 4.
Not Detected: B2 Lever	B2 lever is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Black Toner	Black toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Cyan Toner	Cyan toner is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Develop. Unit (C)	The development unit (cyan) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Develop. Unit (K)	The development unit (black) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Develop. Unit (M)	The development unit (magenta) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Develop. Unit (Y)	The development unit (yellow) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Duplex Feed Unit	The duplex unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Duplex Unit	The duplex feed unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Finisher	The finisher is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Fusing Unit	The fusing unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Input Tray	The paper feed tray is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Interposer	Interposer unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (C)	The photoconductor unit (cyan) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (K)	The photoconductor unit (black) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (M)	The photoconductor unit (magenta) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: PCU (Y)	The photoconductor unit (yellow) is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Transfer Unit	The transfer unit is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 1	Tray 1 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 2	Tray 2 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 3	Tray 3 is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Tray 4	Tray 4 is not correctly set.

Messages	Description
Not Detected: Waste Toner Bottle	Waste toner bottle is not correctly set.
Not Detected: Int. Transfer Unit	Int.transfer unit is not correctly set.
Not Reached, Data Deleted	Unreached job is deleted.
Not Reached, Data Stored	Unreached documents are saved.
Offline	Machine is offline.
Operating Thermo-range Error	The machine is operating outside the permissible temperature range.
Original on Exposure Glass	The original remains on the exposure glass.
Panel Off Mode	The machine is in Panel-Off mode.
Panel Off Mode>>Printing ava.	The machine is in Control Panel-Off mode.
Paper in Duplex Unit	The paper remains in the duplex unit.
Paper in Finisher	The paper remains in Finisher.
Paper Misfeed: ADF	The paper has jammed in Document Feeder.
Paper Misfeed: Duplex Unit	The paper has jammed in Duplex Unit.
Paper Misfeed: Finisher	The paper has jammed in Finisher.
Paper on Finisher ShiftTray 1, 2	The paper remains in Finisher Shift Tray 1 and 2.
Paper on Finisher Shift Tray 2	The paper remains in Finisher Shift Tray 2.
Prepaid Card not inserted	The prepaid card is not inserted, or has insufficient credit.
Print Complete	The print was completed.
Printing...	Printing is in progress.
Processing	Data is being processed.
Proxy Address/Port Incorrect	The proxy address and port setting is incorrect.
Proxy User / Password Incorrect	The proxy user name and password setting is incorrect.
RC Gate Connection Error	Failed connect with RC Gate.

Messages	Description
Readjusting...	The machine is readjusting itself.
Ready	The machine is ready to print.
Renewing Remote Certificate	The remote certificate is being renewed.
Replace Black PCU	It is time to replace the black photoconductor unit.
Replace Charger Kit	It is time to replace the charger kit.
Replace Cleaning Web	It is time to replace the Cleaning Web.
Replace Develop. Unit	It is time to replace the development unit.
Replace Develop. Unit (Black)	It is time to replace the development unit (black).
Replace Develop. Unit (Color)	It is time to replace the development unit (color).
Replace Develop. Unit (Cyan)	It is time to replace the development unit (cyan).
Replace Develop. Unit (Magenta)	It is time to replace the development unit (magenta).
Replace Develop. Unit (Yellow)	It is exchange time of the development unit (yellow).
Replace Developer	It is time to replace the development unit.
Replace Developer (Black)	It is time to replace the development unit (black).
Replace Developer (Cyan)	It is time to replace the development unit (cyan).
Replace Developer (Magenta)	It is time to replace the development unit (magenta).
Replace Developer (Yellow)	It is time to replace the development unit (yellow).
Replace Fusing Unit	It is time to replace the fusing unit.
Replace Int. Transfer Unit	It is time to replace the int. transfer unit.
Replace Maintenance Kit	It is time to replace the maintenance kit.
Replace PCU (Color)	It is time to replace the photoconductor unit (Color).
Replace Transfer Cleaning Unit	It is time to replace the transfer cleaning unit.
Replace Transfer Roller	It is time to replace the transfer roller.
Reset IPDS fonts	An IPDS font error occurred.

Messages	Description
Retarding...	Printing has stopped momentarily to allow printed sheets to dry.
SD Card Authentication failed	SD card authentication failed.
SD Card not inserted	The machine is waiting for SD card.
Setting Remotely	The RDS setting is being processed.
Skipped due to Error	Skipped the error.
Storage Complete	The storage is complete.
Storage Failed	The storage has failed.
Supplies Order Call failed	The supply order call has failed.
Suspend / Resume Key Error	Finisher stop button was pressed.
Transmission Aborted	The transmission was interrupted.
Transmission Complete	The transmission completion was completed.
Transmission Failed	The transmission has failed.
Tray Error: Chaptering	The paper feed tray specification error has occurred because chaptering as well as the normal paper use the same tray for printing.
Tray Error: Duplex Printing	Selected paper tray cannot be used for duplex printing.
Unit Left Open: ADF	Document feeder is opened.
Waiting for Job Suspension	The machine is waiting for Job Suspension.
Warming Up...	The machine is warming up.

 Note

- For details about UNIX commands, see UNIX Supplement.
- Check the error contents that may be printed in the configuration page.

Printer configuration

You can check the printer configuration using telnet.

This section explains the checking procedure for input/output tray and printer language.

- UNIX: Use the “info” command and “rsh”, “rcp”, “ftp”, and “sftp” parameters.
- mshell: Use the “info” command.

Input Tray

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the paper tray
Name	Name of the paper tray
Page Size	Size of paper loaded in the paper tray
Status	Current status of the paper tray • Normal: Normal • NoInputTray: No tray • PaperEnd: No paper

Output Tray

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the output tray
Name	Name of the output tray
Status	Current status of the output tray • Normal: Normal • PaperExist: Paper exist • OverFlow: Paper is full • Error: Other errors

Printer Language

Item	Description
No.	ID number of the printer language used by the printer
Name	Name of the printer language used in the printer

Item	Description
Version	Version of the printer language

Note

- For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

Understanding the Displayed Information

This section explains how to read status information returned by the network interface board.

Print Job Information

Use the following command to display print job information:

- UNIX: Use the "info" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- mshell: Use the "info" command.

4

Item	Description
Rank	Print job status. • Active Printing or preparing for printing. • 1st, 2nd, 3rd, 4th... Waiting to be transferred to the printer.
Owner	Print request user name.
Job	Print request number.
Files	The name of the document.
Total Size	The size of the data (spooled). The default is 0 bytes.

Note

- For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

Print Log Information

This is a record of the most recent jobs printed.

Use the following command to display print log information:

- UNIX: Use the "prnlog" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- telnet : Use the "prnlog" command.

Item	Description
ID	Print request ID.
User	Print request user name.
Page	Number of pages printed
Result	Print Request Result Communication Result - OK Print was completed normally. However, the print result may not be as required due to printer problems. - NG Printing was not completed normally. - Canceled An "rcp", "rsh", or "lpr" command print request was canceled, possibly due to the printing application. Not applicable to the "ftp" or "rprinter" command.
Time	Time the print requested was received. Time of print request reception
User ID (when designating Job ID on telnet)	Printer driver-configured User ID. Appears when the print request ID is specified.
JobName (when designating Job ID on telnet)	Name of the document for printing Appears when the print request ID is specified.

↓ Note

- For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

Configuring the Network Interface Board

Use the following command to display network interface board settings:

- telnet : Use the "show" command.

Item		Description
Common		
	Mode	
	Protocol Up/Down	Protocol Settings
	AppleTalk	
	IPv4	
	IPv6	
	IPsec	
	NetWare	
	SMB	
	PictBridge	
	Device Up/Down	Device Settings
	Parallel	
	USB	
	Bluetooth	
	Ethernet interface	
	Syslog priority	
	NVRAM version	
	Device name	
	Comment	
	Location	
	Contact	
	Soft switch	
	AppleTalk	AppleTalk settings
	Mode	
	Net	

Item		Description
	Object	
	Type	
	Zone	
TCP/IP		TCP/IP settings
	Mode (IPv4)	
	Mode (IPv6)	
	ftp	
	lpr	
	rsh	
	telnet	
	diprint	
	web	
	http	
	ftpc	
	snmp	
	ipp	
	autonet	
	Bonjour	
	ssl	
	nrs	
	rfu	
	nbt	
	ssdp	
	ssh	
	sftp	

Item			Description
		WSD (Device)	
		WSD (Printer)	
		WSD (Scanner)	
		rhpp	
	IPv4		
		DHCP	
		Address	
		Netmask	
		Broadcast	
		Gateway	
	IPv6		
		Stateless	
		Manual	
		Gateway	
		DHCPv6-lite	
		DUID	
		DHCPv6 option lifetime	
	IPsec		
		Manual Mode	
		Excluded Protocol	
		https	
		dns	
		dhcp	
		wins	
	EncapType		

Item		Description
	Host name	
	DNS Domain	
	Access Control	Access Control settings
	IPv4	
	Access Entry [X]	X can be set between 1 and 5.
	IPv6	
	Access Entry [X]	X can be set between 1 and 5.
	SNTP Server	Time settings
	Time Zone	
	SNTP Server polling time	
	SYSLOG server	Websys settings
	Home page URL1	
	Home page link name1	
	Home page URL2	
	Home page link name2	
	Help page URL	
	RHPP Port	
	RHPP timeout	
NetWare		
	EncapType	
	RPRINTER number	
	Print server name	
	File server name	
	Context name	
	Switch	

Item			Description
		Mode	
		NDS/Bindery	
		Packet negotiation	
		Login Mode	
Print job timeout			
Protocol			
SAP interval time			
NDS Tree Name			
Transfer Protocol			
SMB			SMB settings
	Switch		
		Mode	
		Direct print	
		Notification	
Workgroup name			
Computer name			
Comment			
Share name [1]			
Protocol			
Wireless LAN			Wireless LAN settings
	Host Name		
Communication Mode			
SSID			
Channel			
Security			

Item		Description
	WEP Authentication	
	WEP Encryption key number	
	WEP Encryption keys [X]	X can be set between 1 and 4.
	WPA Encryption	
	WPA Authentication	
	Pre-Shared Key	
	User name	
	Domain name	
	EAP Type	
	Password	
	Phase 2 user name	
	Phase 2 Method TTLS	
	Phase 2 Method PEAP	
	Server cert.	
	Intermediate CA	
	Server ID	
	Sub domain	
	MIC check	
DNS		DNS settings
	IPv4	
	Server [X]	X can be set between 1 and 3.
	Selected IPv4 DNS Server	
	IPv6	
	Server [X]	X can be set between 1 and 3.
	Selected IPv6 DNS Server	

Item		Description
	Resolver Protocol	
Domain Name		
	ether	
	wlan	
DDNS		
	ether	
	wlan	
Ethernet		
	802.1X Authentication	
WINS		WINS settings
	ether	
	Primary WINS	
	Secondary WINS	
	wlan	
	Primary WINS	
	Secondary WINS	
Bluetooth		Bluetooth settings
	Bluetooth mode	Bluetooth connection mode
SSDP		SSDP settings
	UUID	
	Profile	
	TTL	
UPnP		UPnP settings
	URL	
Bonjour		Bonjour settings

Item		Description
	Computer Name (cname)	
	Local Hostname (ether)	
	Local Hostname (wlan)	
	Location	
	Priority (diprint)	
	Priority (lpr)	
	Priority (ipp)	
	IP TTL	
	LinkLocal Route for Multi I/F	
	IPP Port	
SNMP		SNMP settings
	SNMPv1v2	
	SNMPv3	
	protocol	
	v1Trap	
	v2Trap	
	v3Trap	
	SNMPv1v2 Remote Setting	
	SNMPv3 Privacy	
ssh		ssh settings
	Compression	
	Port	
	TimeOut	
	Login TimeOut	
AuthFree		Authfree settings

Item		Description
	IPv4	
	AuthFree Entry [X]	X can be set between 1 and 5.
	IPv6	
	AuthFree Entry [X]	X can be set between 1 and 5
	Parallel	
	USB	
	LPR	
	lprm check host	
	lpr prnerr chk	
	Certificate	
	Verification	
	WS-MFP	
	Network Device Name	
	Comments	
	Location	
	Presentation URL	
	WSD (Device) TCP Port	
	WSD (Printer) TCP Port	
	WSD (Printer) Job Timeout	
	WSD (Scanner) TCP Port	
	MetadataVersion	
	UUID	
	IEEE 802.1X	IEEE 802.1X settings
	User Name	
	Domain name	

Item		Description
	EAP Type	
	Password	
	Phase 2 user name	
	Phase 2 Method TTLS	
	Phase 2 Method PEAP	
	Server cert	
	Intermediate CA	
	Server ID	
	Sub domain	
Shell mode		Remote maintenance tool mode

Message List

This is a list of messages that appear in the machine's system log. The system log can be viewed using the "syslog" command.

System Log Information

Use the following command to display the system log information:

- UNIX: Use the "syslog" command and "rsh", "rcp", "ftp", and "sftp" parameters.
- telnet: Use the "syslog" command.

4

Message	Problem and solutions
Access to NetWare server <file server name> denied. Either there is no account for this print server on the NetWare server or password was incorrect.	Login to the file server failed when the print server was online. Make sure the print server is registered in <file server name>. If a password is specified for the print server, delete the password.
account is unavailable: same account name be used.	User account is disabled. This could be because it use the same account name as the administrator account.
account is unavailable: The authentication password is not set up.	User account is disabled. This could be because the authentication password is not set, and only the encryption account is set.
account is unavailable: encryption is impossible.	Encryption is not possible and account is disabled. This could be because: • Security option is not installed. • Encryption password has not been specified.
add_sess_IPv4: bad trap addr: <IPv4 address>, community: <community name>	The IPv4 address (0.0.0.0.) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPv4 address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPv6: bad trap addr: <IPv6 address>, community: <community name>	The IPv6 address [::] is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPv6 address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPv4: community <community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.

Message	Problem and solutions
add_sess_IPv6: community <community name> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
add_sess_IPX: bad trap addr: <IPX address> community <community name>	The IPX address (00:00:00:00:00:00) is unavailable when the community access type is TRAP. Specify the host IPX address for the TRAP destination.
add_sess_IPX: community <communityname> already defined.	The same community name already exists. Use another community name.
adjust time server <NTP server name> offset: xx sec.	ncsd tells you the timing of the NTP server and whether or not the time system clock is set. NTP Server: NTP server name offset: number of seconds of delay (minus number if a time in advance is specified)
ANONYMOUS FTP LOGIN FROM <IP address>, <password>	An anonymous user logged in from the post <IP address> using the password <password>.
Attach FileServer=<file server>	Connection to the file server as the nearest server has been established.
Attach to print queue <print queue name>	The system connects to the print queue when the print server goes online.
authenticating	The supplicant is authenticating with the access point (EAP or WPA).
authentication mode mismatch	The authentication mode of the access point is different from the authentication mode of the supplicant. Use the authentication mode between the access point and the supplicant.
child process exec error !	The network service failed to start. Turn the printer off and then on. If this does not work, contact your service or sales representative.
cipher suite mismatch	The uni-cast / multi-cast suite (TKIP/AES/WEP) of the access point is different from the suite used by the supplicant.

Message	Problem and solutions
client EAP method rejected	The authentication mode of the access point is different with the authentication mode of the supplicant. Use the same authentication mode between the access point and the supplicant.
Client password rejected	The client's password was rejected. Check the client password.
Client TLS certificate rejected	The client's TLS certificate was rejected. Check the certificate.
connected DHCPv6 server <IPv6 address>	The IP address was successfully received from the DHCPv6 server.
Could not attach to FileServer <error number>	Connection to the file server could not be established when the remote printer went online. The file server refused the connection for unknown reason. Check the file server's configuration.
Could not attach to PServer <print server>	Connection to the print server has not been established when the remote printer is turned on. The print server has refused the connection. Check the print server configuration.
connection from <IP address>	A user logged in from the host <IP address>.
Current Interface Speed: xxx Mbps	Speed of the network (10Mbps, 100 Mbps, or 1Gbps).
Current IPX address <IPX address>	The current IP address is <IPX address>.
Duplicate IP=<IP address> (from<MAC address>).	A conflicting IPv4 or IPv6 address was used. Each IPv4 or IPv6 address must be unique. Check the device address in [MAC address].
DHCPv6 server not found.	The DHCPv6 server was not found. Make sure that the DHCPv6 is on the network.
dpsd is disabled.	Communication via PictBridge is unavailable because PictBridge is disabled in the security mode. Enable PictBridge in the security mode.

Message	Problem and solutions
Established SPX Connection with PServer, (RPSocket=<socket number>, connID=<connection ID>)	Connection to the print server was established when the remote printer went online.
FrameType=<frametype name>	The specified frame type name <frame type name> is for NetWare use.
IEEE 802.11 Card does NOT support WPA .	A wireless card that does not support WPA is installed. Install a wireless card that supports WPA.
IEEE 802.11 Card Firmware REV.<version>	Displays the version number of the 802.11 card's firmware.
IEEE 802.11 current channel <channel number>	Displays the current channel number of the active wireless card (in ad hoc and infrastructure mode).
IEEE 802.11 MAC Address = <MAC address>	Displays the MAC address of the wireless interface.
IEEE 802.11 SSID <ssid> (AP MAC Address <MAC address>)	The MAC address and SSID of the access point are connected in infrastructure mode.
IEEE 802.11 <communication mode> mode	Displays IEEE 802.11 communication mode.
(IKE phase-1) mismatched authentication type: local=<authentication type 1> remote=<authentication type 2>	This machine's <authentication type 1> in IKE phase 1 does not match the communicating host's <authentication type 2>, Make sure this machine's ISAKMP SA authentication type matches that of the communicating host.
(IKE phase-1) mismatched encryption type: <encryption algorithm 1> remote=<encryption algorithm 2>	This machine's ISAKMP SA Oakley group <encryption algorithm 1> in IKE phase 1 does not match the communicating host's ISAKMP SA Oakley group < encryption algorithm 2>, Make sure this machine's ISAKMP SA Oakley group matches that of the communicating host.
(IKE phase-1) mismatched DH group: local=<DH group number 1> remote=<DH group number 2>	This machine's ISAKMP SA Oakley group <DH group number 1> in IKE phase 1 does not match the communicating host's ISAKMP SA Oakley group <DH group number 2>, Make sure this machine's ISAKMP SA Oakley group matches that of the communicating host.

Message	Problem and solutions
(IKE phase-1) mismatched hash type: local=<Hash Algorithm 1> remote=<Hash Algorithm 2>	This machine's ISAKMP SA <Hash Algorithm 1> in IKE phase 1 does not match the communicating host's ISAKMP SA <Hash Algorithm 2>, Make sure this machine's ISAKMP SA Hash Algorithm matches that of the communicating host.
Interface (interface name): Duplicate IP Address (<IP address>).	The same IP (IPv4 or IPv6) address was used. Each IP address must be unique. Check the address of the device indicated in [IP address].
<Interface name> card removed	The interface managed by the supplicant has been removed.
<Interface name> interface down	The interface managed by the supplicant is disabled, or cannot connect to the access point.
<Interface name> interface up	The interface managed by the supplicant is enabled, or is connected to the access point.
< Interface > started with IP: < IP address >	IP address (IPv4 or IPv6 address) has been set for the interface and is operating.
< Interface >: Subnet overlap.	The same IP address (IPv4, orIPv6 address) and the subnet mask is used with other device.
job canceled. jobid=%d.	The spooled job was canceled due to error or user request.
Lease Time=<lease time>(sec), RenewTime=<renew time>(sec).	The resource lease time received from the DHCP server is displayed in [lease time] in seconds. The renewal time is displayed in [renew time] in seconds.
LEAP challenge to access point failed	The LEAP challenge to the access point has failed.
Login to fileserver <file server name> (<IPX IP>), <NDS BINDERY>	When the print server was online, the system logged in to <file server> in NDS or BINDERY mode. The transfer protocol in use is also displayed.
Memory allocate error.	Date cannot be obtained. Disconnect the USB cable, and then connect it.
MIC failure TKIP counter measures started	The supplicant using TKIP has detected two instances of tampering within 60 seconds and has started counter measures.

Message	Problem and solutions
MIC failure TKIP counter measures stopped	Counter measures have stopped after 60 seconds (since the supplicant using TKIP started counter measures against tampering).
Name registration failed. name=<NetBIOS name>	Name registration of <NetBIOS Name> failed. Change to a different NetBIOS name.
Name registration success in Broadcast name=<NetBIOS name>	Name registration by <NetBIOS Name> broadcast was successful.
Name registration success. WINS server=<WINS server address> NetBIOS Name=<NetBIOS name>	Name registration of <NetBIOS Name> to <WINS server address> was successful.
no RADIUS/authentication server	The supplicant has received a message reporting that a usable RADIUS server cannot be found.
no smart card detected on device	PEAP/GTC (Generic Token Card) is selected, but a smart card using GTC authentication cannot be found.
no WPA information element in probe response, rescanning	There is no WPA information on the response from the SSID probe of the access point you want to use. The supplicant is rescanning.
Open log file <file name>	The specified log file was opened when the print server was online.
Printer <printer name> has no queue	The print queue is not assigned to the printer when the print server was online. Assign the print queue to the printer using NetWare administrator account, and then restart the printer.
Printer queue <print queue name> cannot be serviced by printer 0, <print server name>	The print queue cannot be established when the print server is online. Make sure that the print queue exists on the specified file server.
Print server <print server name> has no printer	The printer was not assigned to the print server when the print server was online. Use the NetWare administrator account to assign the printer, and then restart the printer.
Print sessions full	No more print jobs can be accepted. Wait a while before sending any more print jobs.

Message	Problem and solutions
Required file server (<file server name>) not found	The required file server <file server name> could not be found.
sap enable. saptype=<SAP type>, sapname=<SAP name>	The SAP function was started. The SAP packet is issued to advertise the service in the SAP table on the NetWare server.
server certificate invalid	The server ID is disabled. Check the server authentication.
server identity invalid	The server ID is disabled. Check the server authentication.
server not trusted	The RADIUS server cannot be trusted.
session IPv4 <community name> not defined.	The requested community name is not defined.
session IPv6 <community name> not defined.	The requested community name is not defined.
session_IPX <community name> not defined.	The requested community name is not defined.
Set context to <NDS context name>	The NDS context name <NDS context name> has been set.
shutdown signal received. network service rebooting...	The smbd service has started.
SMTPC: failed to get smtp server ip-address.	The SMTP server IP address could not be obtained. This could be because: • The specified DNS server could not be found. • No connection to the network has been established. • The specified DNS server could not be found. • An incorrect DNS server is specified. • The specified SMTP server IP address could not be found in the DNS server.
SMTPC: failed to connect smtp server. timeout.	Connection to the SMTP server failed due to timeout. This could be because the specified SMTP server name is incorrect, or no connection to the network has been established, or the network configuration is incorrect, so there is no response from the SMTP server. Check the SMTP server

Message	Problem and solutions
	name, or the network connection and configuration.
SMTPC: refused connect by smtp server.	Connection to the SMTP server is denied. This could be because server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the SMTP server name, port number, or the SMTP server port number.
SMTPC: no smtp server. connection close.	Connection to the SMTP server failed due to no response from SMTP. This could be because a server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the SMTP server name, port number, or the SMTP server port number.
SMTPC: failed to connect smtp server.	Connection to the SMTP server failed. This could be because no connection to the network has been established, or the network configuration is incorrect, so there is no response from the SMTP server, or the specified SMTP server name is incorrect, or the specified SMTP server IP address could not be found in the DNS server, or a server other than the SMTP server has been specified, or the specified SMTP server port number is incorrect. Check the DNS Server's IP address and SMTP server's IP address, or the SMTP server name and SMTP port number, or the SMTP server's SMTP port number, or the network connection and configuration.
SMTPC: username or password wasn't correct. [response code] (information)	Connection to the SMTP server failed, because the specified SMTP user name is incorrect, or the specified SMTP password is incorrect. Check the SMTP user name and password.
Snmp over IPv4 is ready	Communication over IPv4 with snmp is available.
Snmp over IPv6 is ready.	Communication over IPv6 with snmp is available.
Snmp over IPX is ready.	Communication over IPX with snmp is available.
success key received	The supplicant received the EAP-Success key.

Message	Problem and solutions
success but invalid key	The supplicant received a message reporting that EAP authentication was successful, but the EAPOL key was invalid.
supplicant unbound	The supplicant is not connected to the unbound access point.
There is problem in dhcp server operation.	There is a problem with the DHCP server. If multiple DHCP servers are active on the network, check that they are assigning unique IP addresses to each machine.
The print server received error <error number> during attempt to log in to the network. Access to the network was denied. Verify that the print server name and password are correct.	Login to the file server failed when the print server was online. The print server is not registered or a password is specified. Register the print server without specifying a password.
too many pictures.	PictBridge printing failed because too many image are sent during one print transaction. Reduce images at one print transaction.
trap account is unavailable.	v3Trap cannot be sent. This could be because the Trap destination account is different from the account specified by the printer.
unauthenticated	The authentication failed. The supplicant was denied access to the access point, or was not authenticated.
Updated (option name)(value) via DHCPv6 Server	The parameter obtained from the DHCP server has been updated.
usbd is disabled.	Plug and Play is unavailable because the machine is in security mode. Enable USB in Security Mode.
waiting for keys	The supplicant is waiting for the session key.
WINS name registration: No response to server (WINS server address)	There was no response from the WINS server. Check that the correct WINS server address is entered. Also, check that the WINS server is functioning properly.
WINS wrong scope ID=<scope ID>	The scope ID is invalid. Use a valid scope ID.

Message	Problem and solutions
write error occurred. (diskfull)	A "diskfull" error occurred while the machine was writing to the spool file. Wait for the current print job to finish, When it finishes, more HDD space will be available. Only pages that were spooled when the error occurred will be printed.
write error occurred. (fatal)	A "diskfull" error occurred while the machine was writing to the spool file. Wait for the current print job to finish, When it finishes, more HDD space will be available. Only pages that were spooled when the error occurred will be printed.
WSD (Device) started.	WS-Device has started.
WSD (Printer) started.	WS-Printer has started.
WSD (Scanner) started.	WS-Scanner has started.
#[nfa (process ID)] <time date> + Failed to send logos to a log collection server <IP address>.	An error occurred while trying to send a log file to both the primary and secondary log collection servers.
#[nfa (process ID)] <time date> + Failed to send logs to a collection server <IP address> n time(s) in 1 hour.	60 minutes has passed since the last log entry. During that time, an error occurred while trying to send the log file to both the primary and secondary log collection servers.

Note

- For details about UNIX commands and parameters, see UNIX Supplement.

5. Registering Addresses and Users for Facsimile/Scanner Functions

This chapter describes how to register destinations and users in the Address Book. For details on how to access System Settings, see "Accessing System Settings".

Address Book

This section describes Address Book settings.

Registering information such as the names of users and their e-mail addresses in the Address Book allows you to manage them easily.

★ Important

- Address Book data is stored on the hard disk. It can be lost if there is some kind of hard disk failure.
- The manufacturer shall not be held responsible for any damages resulting in data loss.

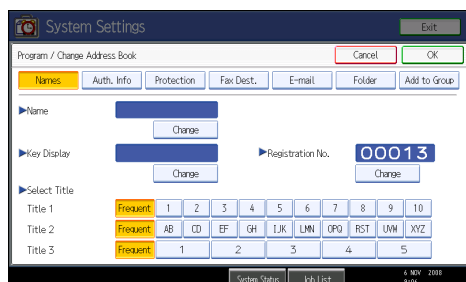
5

You can register and manage the following items in the Address Book:

Names

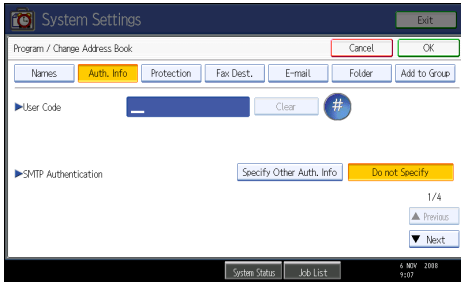
You can register the name of the user and the key display. This is the basic information required for managing users of the machine.

To register a fax number or e-mail address in the address book, you must register information such as the user name and destination name in advance.



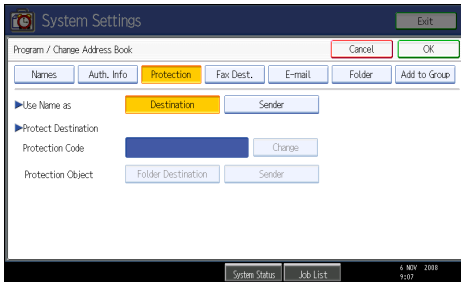
Auth. Info

You can register user codes in order to restrict particular functions to certain users, and to check their use of each function. You can also register login user names and login passwords to be used when sending e-mail, sending to folders, or accessing an LDAP server.



Protection

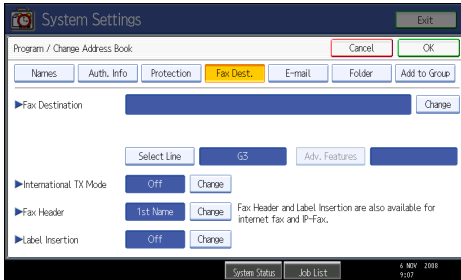
You can set protection codes to stop sender's name from being used or folders from being accessed without authorization.



Fax Dest.

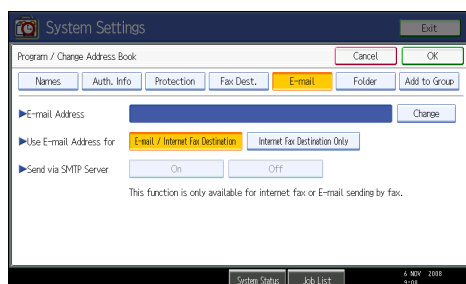
You can register fax numbers, line, fax header and select label insertion.

When using IP-Fax, you can register the IP-Fax destination and select the protocol.



E-mail

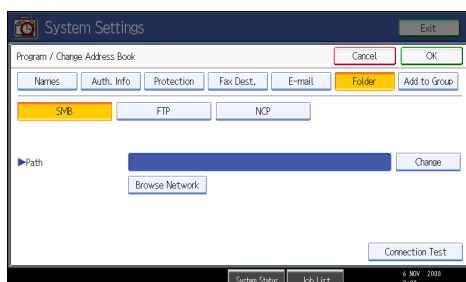
You can register e-mail destinations in the Address Book.



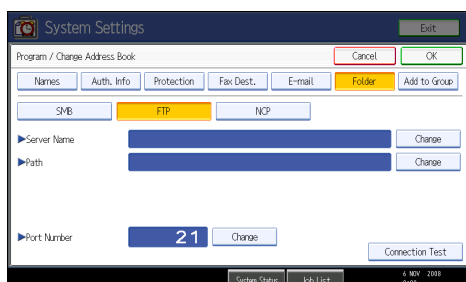
Folder

You can register the protocol, path name and server name.

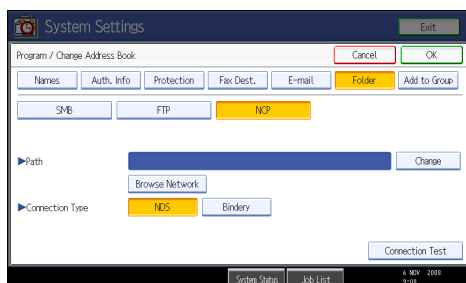
- SMB



- FTP

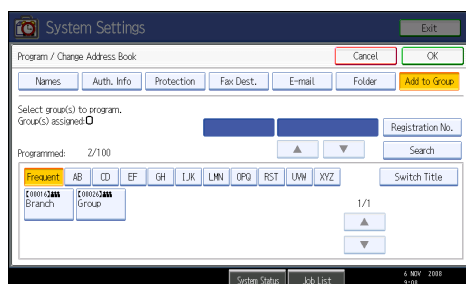


- NCP



Add to Group

You can put registered e-mail and folder destinations into a group for easier management.



↓ Note

- You can also use Web Image Monitor to register names in the Address Book. With SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can register multiple names at the same time. For details about using Web Image Monitor, see Web Image Monitor Help.
- Using Address Management Tool in SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin, you can backup Address Book data. We recommend backing up data when using the Address Book. For operating instructions, see SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin Help.

5

Managing names in the Address Book

By registering a name and key display beforehand, you can specify e-mail and folder destinations simply by selecting the name key.

📖 Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Sending fax by Quick Dial

Register a fax number in the Address Book so you can specify it only by selecting the fax destination, shown on the fax initial display when sending a fax. When label insertion is set to "On", the receiver's name and standard messages are printed on the fax message when it is received at the other end.

By registering IP-Fax destinations in the Address Book, you can specify a destination simply by selecting it from the destinations that appear in the initial fax display. Registered IP-Fax numbers can be used and printed as sender's IP-Fax numbers.

📖 Reference

- p.256 "Fax Destination"

Sending e-mail by Quick Dial

By registering e-mail addresses in the Address Book, you can specify e-mail destinations simply by selecting them from the fax initial display when sending a document by Internet fax or e-mail.

You can also specify an e-mail address by selecting the destination shown on the initial scanner display when sending a document using the scanner function. A registered e-mail address can be used as the sender's address, and the sender's addresses are automatically entered in the "From" field of an e-mail header.

Reference

- p.268 "E-mail Destination"

Sending received fax documents or scanned files to a shared folder directly

After registering the path name, user name and password, you can connect to a shared folder simply by selecting the destination shown on the initial facsimile display whenever sending files using the facsimile function to a shared folder. You can also connect to a shared folder by selecting the destination shown on the initial scanner display whenever sending files using the scanner function.

To share the folder using Windows, select the SMB protocol.

To register the folder to the FTP server, select the FTP protocol.

To register the folder to the NetWare server, select the NCP protocol.

Reference

- p.273 "Registering Folders"

Preventing unauthorized user access to shared folders from the machine

After registering a protection code, you can specify the object of protection to prevent an e-mail destination from being used without permission.

You can prevent unauthorized access to registered folders.

Reference

- p.300 "Registering a Protection Code"

Managing users and machine usage

Register user codes to limit users to the following functions and check their use of each function:

- Copier
- Document Server

- Facsimile
- Printer
- Scanner

Reference

- p.247 "Authentication Information"

Registering Names

Register user information including their names.

The user name is useful for selecting a destination when sending faxes or e-mail.

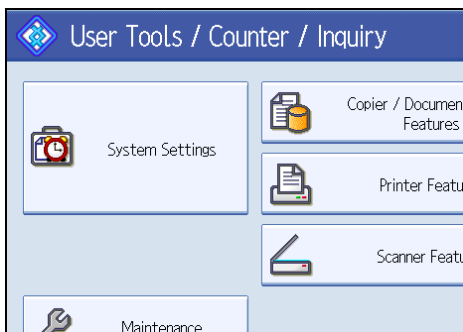
You can also use it as a folder destination.

You can register up to 2000 names.

Registering Names

This section describes how to register names.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Press [New Program].
7. Press [Change] on the right of the Name.
The name entry display appears.
8. Enter the name, and then press [OK].

9. Press the key for the classification you want to use under "Select Title".



The keys you can select are as follows:

- [Frequent]: Added to the page that is displayed first.
- [AB], [CD], [EF], [GH], [IJK], [LMN], [OPQ], [RST], [UVW], [XYZ], [1] to [10]: Added to the list of items in the selected title.

You can select [Frequent] and one more page for each title.

10. Press [OK].

11. Press [Exit].

12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

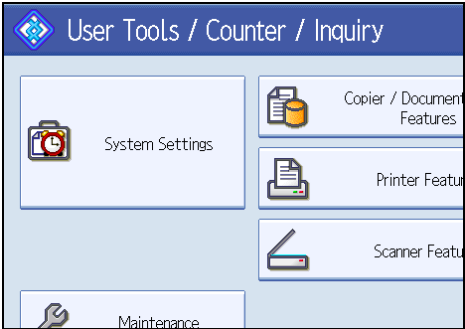
- The name can be used for documents in the Document Server. For details about the Document Server, see "Using the Document Server", Copy and Document Server Reference.

Changing a Registered Name

This section describes how to change a name.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the registered name you want to change.
Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.
7. To change the name or key display, press [Change] on the right of the "Name" or "Key Display".
8. Enter the name or key display, and then press [OK].
9. To change the title, press the key for the classification you want to use from "Select Title".
10. To change the registration number, press [Change] under "Registration No.".
11. Enter a new registration number using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.
12. Press [OK].
13. Press [Exit].
14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

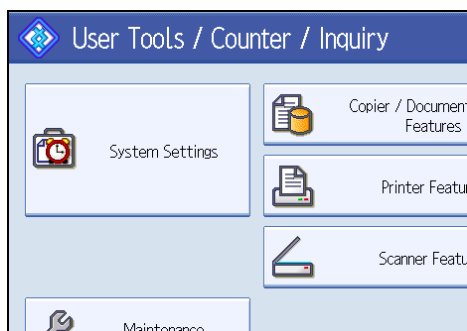
↓ Note

- You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

Deleting a Registered Name

This section describes how to delete a name.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Press [Delete].

6. Select the name you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

7. Press [Yes].

8. Press [Exit].

9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Authentication Information

Following describes the procedure for authenticating a user code.

★ Important

- **The functions associated with each user code are the same. If you change or delete user codes, management data and limits associated with that code become invalid.**

Register user codes to limit users to the following functions and check their use of each function:

- Copier
- Document Server
- Facsimile
- Printer
- Scanner

↓ Note

- You can register up to 440 user codes.
- The number of copies made of documents stored in the Document Server using the facsimile function is counted for each user code. This allows you to check each user's usage.
- The number of copies scanned using the scanner function is counted for each user code. This allows you to check each user's usage.
- To automatically register the printer driver user code, select [PC Control] under Printer for the printer in User Code Authentication. To use the user code set in User Tools, set the user codes registered in User Tools for the printer driver.
- For details about setting user codes for the printer driver, see the printer driver Help.

📖 Reference

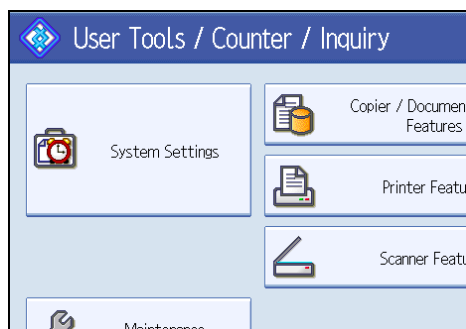
- p.45 "Administrator Tools"

Registering a User Code

This section describes how to register a user code.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

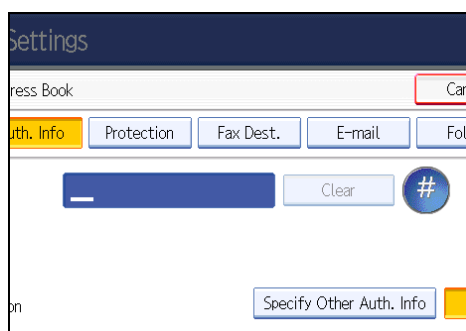
5

6. Press the name whose code is to be registered, or enter the registered number using the number key.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Auth. Info].

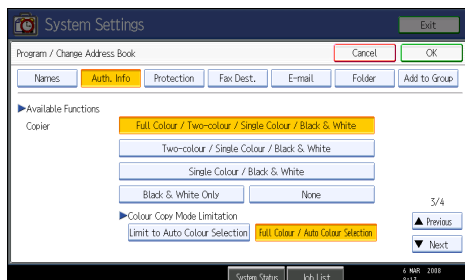
8. Enter the user code using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.



If you make a mistake, press [Clear] or the [Clear/Stop] key.

9. Press [▼Next] twice.

10. Select the functions to be used with the user code from "Available Functions".



11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Exit].

13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- You can enter a one-to eight-digit user code.
- To register the name, see "Registering Names".

Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

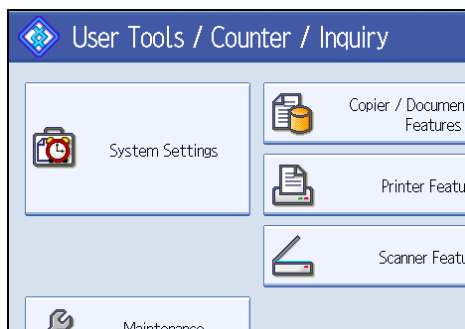
Changing a User Code

This section describes how to change a user code.

Important

- Even if you change a user code, the counter value will not be cleared.

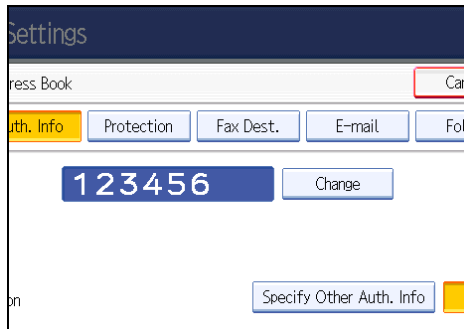
- Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- Press [System Settings].



- Press [Administrator Tools].
- Press [Address Book Management].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.**6. Select the user whose user code you want to change.**

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys. You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Auth. Info].**8. Press [Change], and then enter the new user code using the number keys.****9. Press the [#] key.****10. To change the available functions, press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next] twice.****11. Press the key to select the functions to enable them.**

Press the key to highlight it, and then the function is enabled. To cancel a selection, press the highlighted key.

12. Press [OK].**13. Press [Exit].****14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.****Note**

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Deleting a User Code

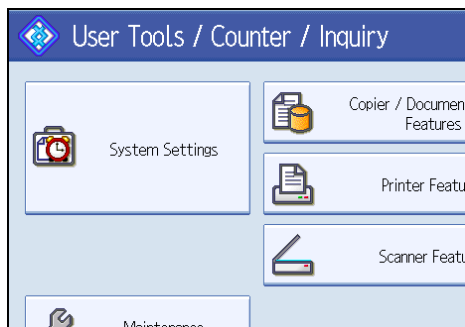
This section describes how to delete a user code.

Important

- After clearing the user code, the counter is automatically cleared.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].

5. Press [Program / Change].

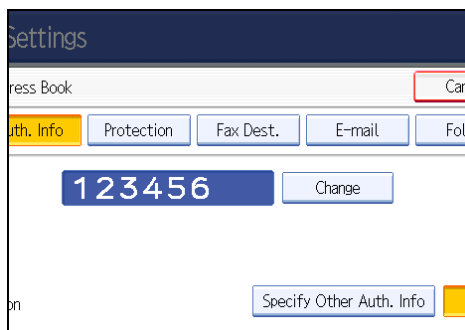
6. Select the name whose code is to be deleted.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Auth. Info].

8. Press [Change] to delete the user code, and then press the [#] key.



9. Press [OK].

10. Press [Exit].

11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To delete a name from the Address Book entirely, see "Registering Names".

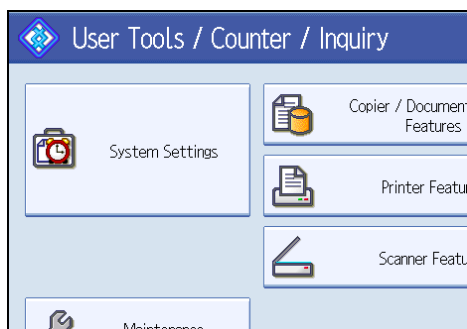
Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Displaying the Counter for Each User

This section describes how to display the counter for each user.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



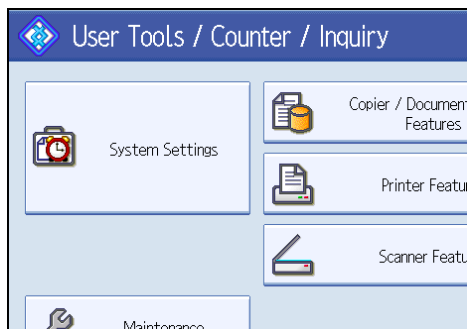
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Display / Clear / Print Counter per User].
5. Select the function usage you want to print from [Copier Counter], [Printer Counter], [Fax Counter] or [Scanner Counter].

Counters for individual function usage under each user code appear.

Printing the Counter for Each User

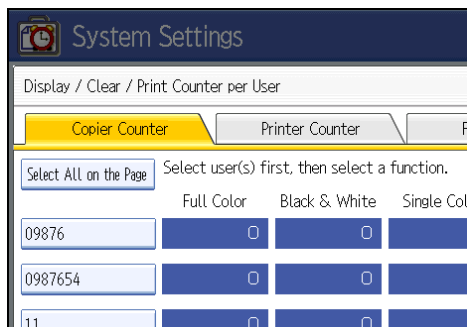
This section describes how to print the counter for each user.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



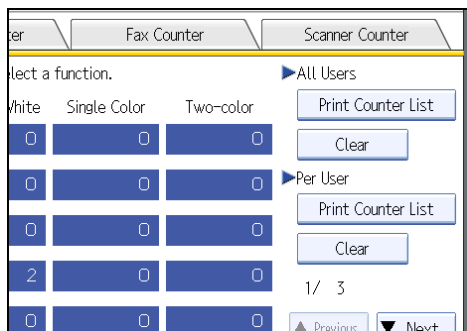
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Display / Clear / Print Counter per User].

5. Select a user code from the left side of the display.



Press [Select All on the Page] to select all user codes on the page.

6. Press [Print Counter List] under "Per User".



Enter the user code, and then press the [#] key if the user code is registered.

7. Select the function usage you want to print from [Copier Counter], [Printer Counter], [Fax Prints], [Fax Transmission], [Scanner Counter], and [Total Prints].

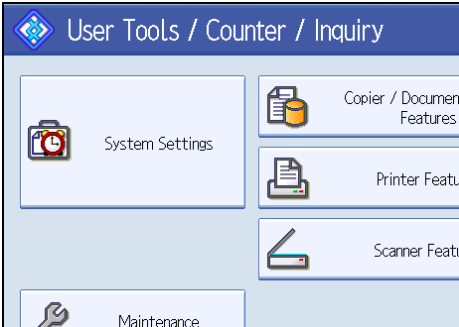
8. Press [Print].

Printing the Counter for All Users

This section describes how to print the counter for all users.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].

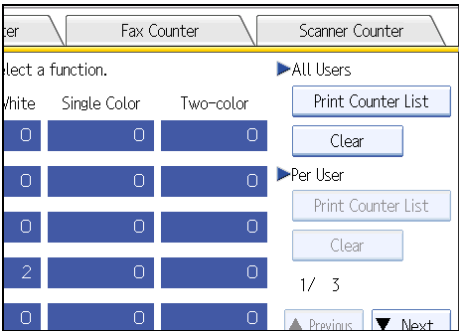


3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Display / Clear / Print Counter per User].

5. Press [Print Counter List] under "All Users".

5



Enter the user code, and then press the [#] key if the user code is registered.

6. Select the function usage you want to print from [Copier Counter], [Printer Counter], [Fax Prints], [Fax Transmission], [Scanner Counter], and [Total Prints].

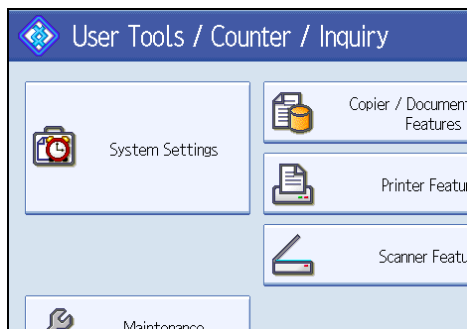
7. Press [Print].

Clearing the Number of Prints

This section describes how to clear the counter.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



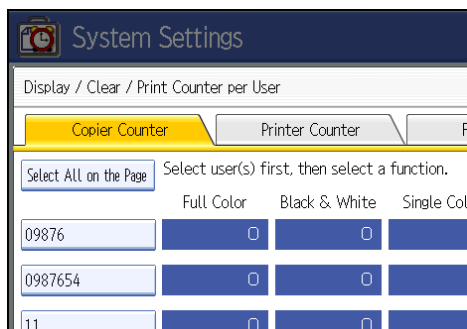
3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Display / Clear / Print Counter per User].

5. Select the user code to clear.

6. To clear the number of prints made under a user code, select the user code from the left side of the display.

5



Press [Select All on the Page] to select all user codes on the page.

7. Press [Clear] under "Per User".

8. Select the function usage you want to clear from [Copier Counter], [Printer Counter], [Fax Prints], [Fax Transmission], [Scanner Counter], and [Total Prints].

9. Press [OK].

10. To clear the number of prints for all user codes, press [Clear] under "All Users".

11. Select the function usage you want to clear from [Copier Counter], [Printer Counter], [Fax Prints], [Fax Transmission], [Scanner Counter], and [Total Prints].

12. Press [OK].

13. Press [Exit].

14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Fax Destination

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting Fax Destinations.

Register a fax destination so you do not need to enter fax numbers each time, and can send documents that have been scanned in using the facsimile function.

- It is easy to select the fax destination if you register "Name" and "Key Display" for the fax destination.
- You can register fax destinations as a group. For details about registering a group, see "Registering a Group".
- You can register fax destinations by selecting them from redial function.
- Registered Fax numbers can be used as sender's Fax numbers.

There are two types of fax destination, as shown below:

- **Fax Destination**
Select this to send the fax over the telephone network.
- **IP-Fax**
Select this to send the fax to a machine on a TCP/IP network.
You cannot send the fax to a machine on another network if that network is behind a firewall.

You can program the following items in a fax destination:

Fax number

Registers the destination's fax number. You can enter a fax number using up to 128 digits. You must include every digit in the number.

SUB Code

Registering a SUB Code allows you to use Confidential Transmission to send messages to the other fax machines which support a similar function called "SUB Code". See "Setting SUB Codes for Transmission", Facsimile Reference.

SEP Code

Registering a SEP Code allows you to use Polling Reception to receive faxes from the other fax machines which support Polling Reception. See "Setting SEP Codes for Reception", Facsimile Reference.

International TX mode

When setting the International TX mode to [On], the machine transmits more carefully by lowering transmission speed. However, communication times increase.

Fax header

You can select to print a fax header on fax messages the other party receives.

The default is "1st Name".

Label insertion

Use label insertion to print information such as the destination name on the sheet printed out at the destination.

Data is printed as follows:

- Destination Name

The destination name specified in [Fax Destination] is printed with "To" before it at the top of the sheet.

- Standard Message

A registered two-line sentence is printed under "Destination Name".

To use this function, set Label Insertion to [On] when programming fax destinations and also press [Label Insertion] when sending fax documents.

Fax header and label insertion are also printed when sending by e-mail using the fax function.

You can program a standard message other than those registered in the machine.

See "Send Settings", Facsimile Reference.

You can program the following items in an IP-Fax Destination:

IP-Fax

Register the IP-Fax destination. You can register the name using up to 128 characters. You must make this setting when using IP-Fax.

This setting only works if the IP-Fax function has been selected.

SUB Code

Registering a SUB Code allows you to use Confidential Transmission to send messages to the other fax machines which support a similar function called "SUB Code". See "Setting SUB Codes for Transmission", Facsimile Reference.

SEP Code

Registering a SEP Code allows you to use Polling Reception to receive faxes from the other fax machines which support Polling Reception. See "Setting SEP Codes for Reception", Facsimile Reference.

Select Protocol

Select the protocol for the IP-Fax transmission.

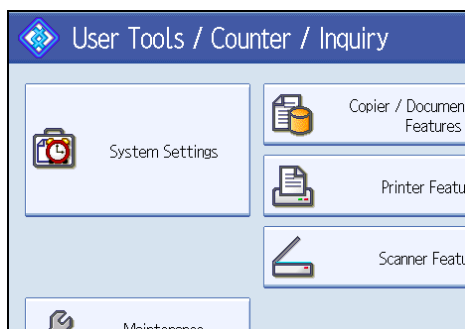
This setting only works if the IP-Fax function has been selected.

Registering a Fax Destination

This section describes how to register a fax destination.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

5

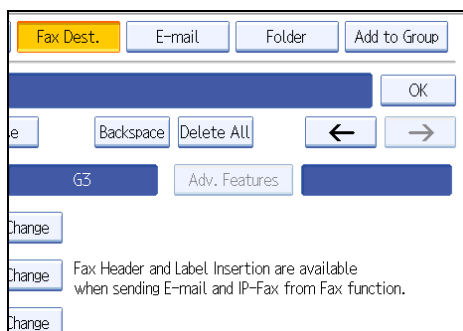
6. Select the name whose fax destination you want to register.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

7. Press [Fax Dest.].

8. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".

9. Enter the fax number using the number keys, and then press [OK].



10. Specify optional settings such as "SUB Code", "SEP Code", and "International TX Mode".

11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Exit].

13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- When a group is registered, you can also add this fax destination to the group. For details about registering groups, see "Registering Names to a Group".

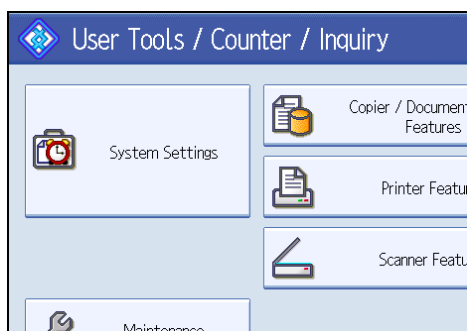
Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"
- p.290 "Registering Names to a Group"

Changing a Fax Destination

This section describes how to change a registered fax destination.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose fax destination you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Fax Dest.].
8. Change the settings.
9. Press [OK].
10. Press [Exit].
11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

To change the fax number

This section describes how to change the fax number.

1. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".
2. Enter the new fax number using the number keys, and then press [OK].

To program the SUB Code

This section describes how to program the SUB Code.

1. Press [Adv. Features], and then press [SUB Code].
2. Press [Change] under "TX SUB Code".
3. Enter the new SUB Code, and then press [OK].
4. To change the password, press [Change] under "Password (SID)".
5. Enter the new password, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

5

To program the SEP Code

This section describes how to program the SEP Code.

1. Press [Adv. Features], and then press [SEP Code].
2. Press [Change] under "RX SEP Code".
3. Enter the new SEP Code, and then press [OK].
4. To change the password, press [Change] under "Password (PWD)".
5. Enter the new password, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

To set the International TX Mode

This section describes how to set the International TX Mode.

1. Press [Change] under "International TX Mode".
2. Select [Off] or [On], and then press [OK].

To select the fax header

This section describes how to select the fax header.

You can register the fax header in Program Fax Information in the system settings for Facsimile Features.

1. Press [Change] under "Fax Header".
2. Select [1st Name] or [2nd Name], and then press [OK].

To set label insertion

This section describes how to set label insertion.

When Label Insertion is set to ON, the receiver's name and standard messages are printed on the fax message when it is received at the other end.

1. Press [Change] under "Label Insertion".
2. Press [On].
3. Press [Change] under "Line 2".
4. Select the new standard message or press [Manual Entry] to enter the new message.
5. Enter the new message, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].
7. Press [Change] under "Line 3".
8. Select the new standard message, and then press [OK].
9. Press [OK].

↓ Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

📖 Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Deleting a Fax Destination

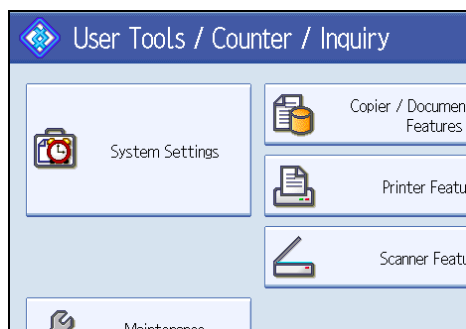
This section describes how to delete a registered fax destination.

★ Important

- If you delete a destination that is a specified delivery destination, messages to its registered Personal Box, for example, cannot be delivered. Be sure to check the settings in the fax function before deleting any destinations.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

5. Select the name whose fax destination you want to delete.

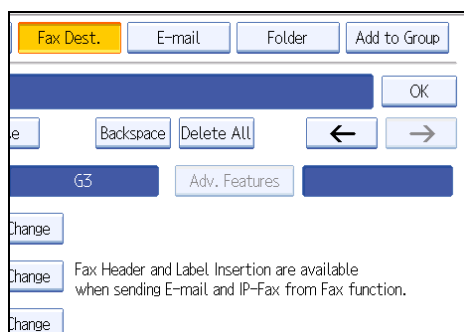
Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Fax Dest.].

8. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".

9. Press [Delete All], and then press [OK].



10. Press [OK].

11. Press [Exit].

12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ **Note**

- To delete the name, key display, and title, see "Registering Names".

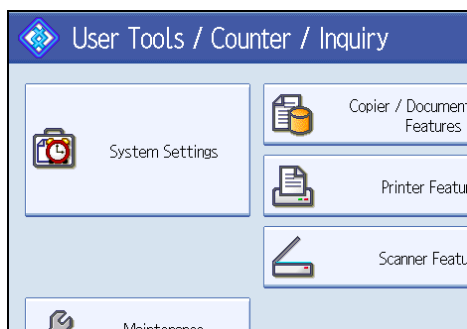
📖 **Reference**

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Registering an IP-Fax Destination

This section describes how to register an IP-Fax Destination.

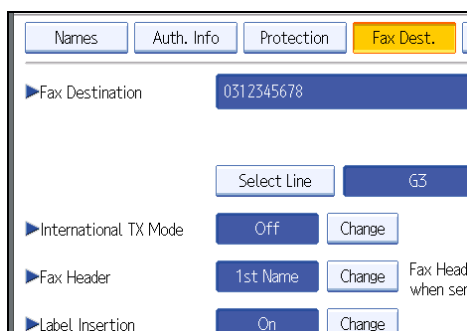
1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose IP-Fax destination you want to register.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

7. Press [Fax Dest.].
8. Press [Select Line], and then select [H.323] or [SIP].



9. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".
10. Enter the IP-Fax destination.
11. Press [OK].
12. Press [OK].
13. Press [Exit].
14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".

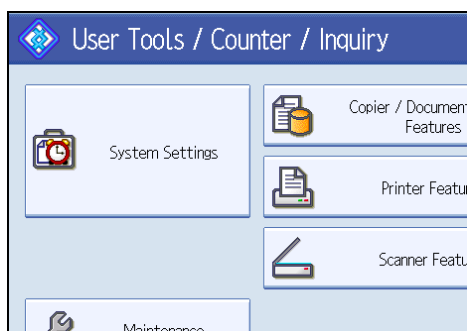
Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Changing a Registered IP-Fax Destination

This section describes how to change an IP-Fax Destination.

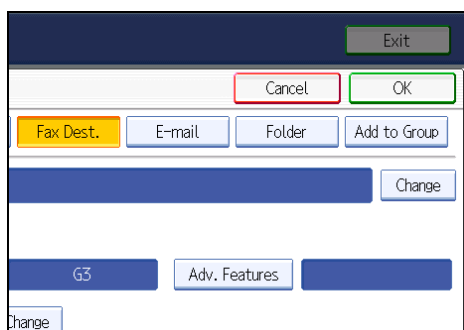
1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose IP-Fax destination you want to change.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Fax Dest.].
8. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".



Enter the new destination, and then press [OK].

9. Press [OK].

10. Press [Exit].

11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

To change the IP-Fax Destination

This section describes how to change a registered IP-Fax destination.

1. Press [Change] under "Use Name as".
2. Enter the new destination, and then press [OK].

5

To change the protocol

This section describes how to select the protocol.

1. Press [Select Line].
2. Select [H.323] or [SIP].
3. Press [OK].

To program the SUB Code

This section describes how to program the SUB Code.

1. Press [Adv. Features], and then press [SUB Code].
2. Press [Change] under "TX SUB Code".
3. Enter the SUB Code, and then press [OK].
4. To enter a password, press [Change] under "Password (SID)".
5. Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

To program the SEP Code

This section describes how to program the SEP Code.

1. Press [Adv. Features], and then press [SEP Code].
2. Press [Change] under "RX SEP Code".
3. Enter a SEP Code using the number keys, and then press [OK].
4. To enter a password, press [Change] under "Password (PWD)".
5. Enter a password using the number keys, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].

To select the fax header

This section describes how to select the fax header.

1. Press [Change] under "Fax Header".
2. Select [1st Name] or [2nd Name], and then press [OK].

5

To set label insertion

This section describes how to set label insertion.

When Label Insertion is set to ON, the receiver's name and standard messages are printed on the fax message when it is received at the other end.

1. Press [Change] under "Label Insertion".
2. Press [On].
3. Press [Change] under "Line 2".
4. Select the new standard message or press [Manual Entry] to enter the new message.
5. Enter the new message, and then press [OK].
6. Press [OK].
7. Press [Change] under "Line 3".
8. Select the new standard message, and then press [OK].
9. Press [OK].

Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

Reference

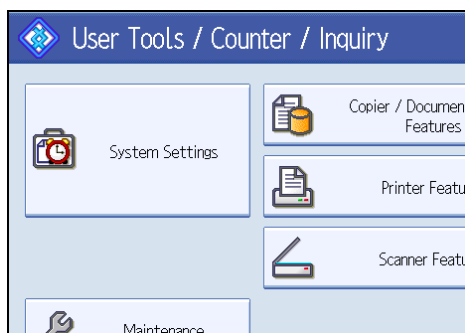
- p.243 "Registering Names"

Deleting a Registered IP-Fax Destination

This section describes how to delete a registered IP-Fax destination.

If you delete a destination that is a specified delivery destination, messages to its registered Personal Box, for example, cannot be delivered. Be sure to check the settings in the fax function before deleting any destinations.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Press [Program / Change].
6. Select the name whose IP-Fax destination you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Fax Dest.].
8. Press [Change] under "Fax Destination".
9. Press [Delete All], and then press [OK].
10. Press [OK].
11. Press [Exit].
12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

- To delete the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

📖 Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

E-mail Destination

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting E-mail Destination.

Register e-mail destinations so you do not need to enter an e-mail address every time, and can send scan files from scanner or fax function by e-mail.

- It is easy to select the e-mail destination if you register "Name" and "Key Display" as the e-mail destination.
- You can register e-mail destinations as a group.
- You can use the e-mail address as the sender's address when sending scan files in scanner mode. If you want to do this, set a protection code on the sender address to prevent unauthorized access.



Note

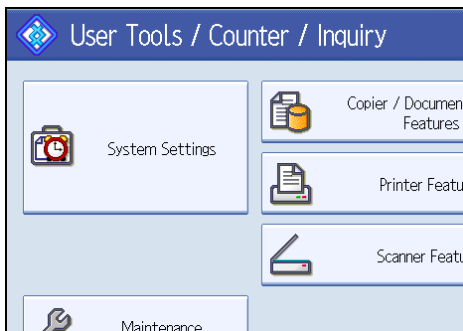
- You can select an e-mail address from an LDAP server, and then register it in the Address Book. See "Sending Scan Files by E-mail", Scanner Reference.
- You can set the machine to send a Transmission Result Report by e-mail whenever a transmission is sent. See Facsimile Reference.

5

Registering an E-mail Destination

This section describes how to register an e-mail destination.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].

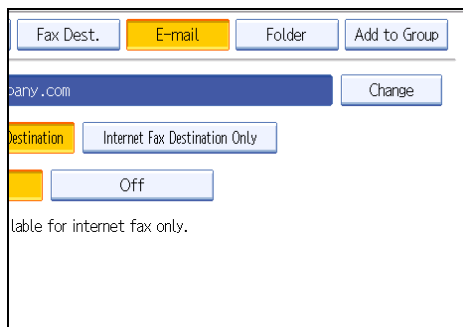


3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose e-mail address you want to register.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

7. Press [E-mail].

8. Press [Change].



9. Enter the e-mail address.



10. Press [OK].

11. Select [E-mail / Internet Fax Destination] or [Internet Fax Destination Only].

If [E-mail / Internet Fax Destination] is specified, registered e-mail addresses appear in both the internet fax address display and E-mail address display on the fax function screen, and in the address display on the scanner function screen.

If [Internet Fax Destination Only] is specified, registered e-mail addresses only appear in the internet fax display on the fax function screen.

12. If you want to use Internet fax, specify whether or not to use "Send via SMTP Server".

13. Press [OK].

14. Press [Exit].

15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- You can enter up to 128 characters for the e-mail address.
- To register the name, see "Registering Names".

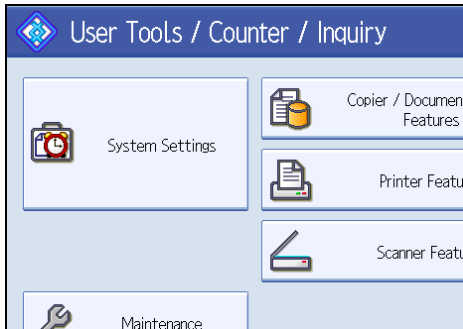
Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Changing an E-mail Destination

This section describes how to change an e-mail destination.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].

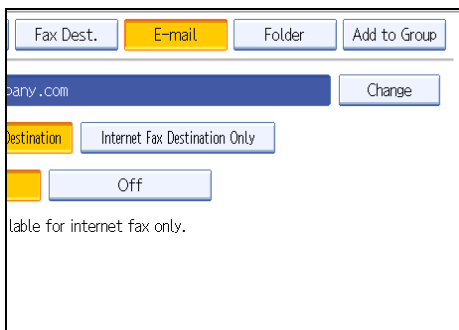


3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose e-mail address you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [E-mail].
8. Press [Change] under "E-mail Address".



9. Enter the e-mail address, and then press [OK].
10. Press [OK].
11. Press [Exit].
12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

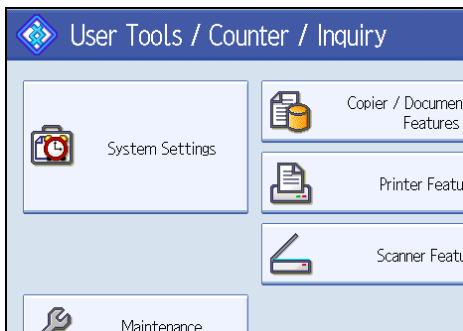
📖 Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Deleting an E-mail Destination

This section describes how to delete an e-mail destination.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose e-mail address you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys. You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [E-mail].
8. Press [Change] under "E-mail Address".
9. Press [Delete All], and then press [OK].
10. Press [OK].
11. Press [Exit].
12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

- To delete the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Registering Folders

This section describes the procedure for registering, changing, and deleting folders.

By registering a shared folder, you can send scan files or received fax documents to it directly.

There are three types of protocol you can use:

- SMB
For sending files to shared Windows folders.
- FTP
Use when sending files to an FTP server.
- NCP
Use when sending files to a NetWare server.

↓ Note

- For details about protocols, server names, and folder levels, consult your network administrator.
- You can prevent unauthorized users from accessing folders from the machine. See "Registering a Protection Code".
- You can only select either SMB, FTP, or NCP. If you change protocol after finishing your settings, all previous entries are cleared.

📖 Reference

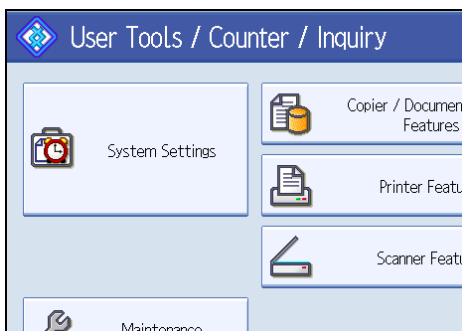
- p.300 "Registering a Protection Code"

5

Registering an SMB Folder

This section describes how to register an SMB folder.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].

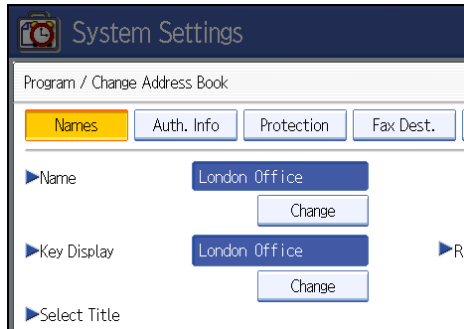


3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose folder you want to register.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

7. Press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next].

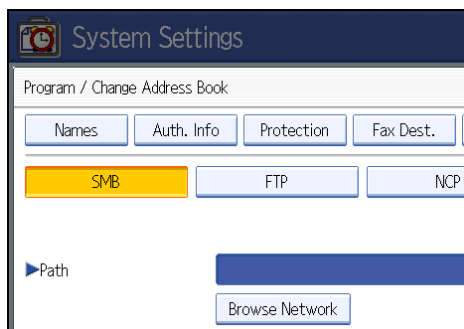


8. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] on the right side of Folder Authentication.

When [Do not Specify] is selected, the SMB User Name and SMB Password that you have specified in Default User Name/Password (Send) of File Transfer settings applies.

9. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".
10. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].
11. Press [Change] under "Login Password".
12. Enter the password, and then press [OK].
13. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].
14. Press [Folder].
15. Press [SMB].

To specify a folder, you can either enter the path manually or locate the folder by browsing the network.



16. Specify the path.

For details about how to specify the path manually, see "Locating the SMB folder manually".

For details about how to specify the path using Browse Network, see "Locating the SMB folder using Browse Network".

17. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.

18. Press [Exit].

If the connection test fails, check the settings, and then try again.

19. Press [OK].

20. Press [Exit].

21. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the user name.
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the password.
- You can enter a path using up to 128 characters.
- If User Authentication is specified, contact your administrator.

Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Locating the SMB folder manually

This section describes how to locate the SMB folder manually.

- 1. Press [Change] under "Path".**
- 2. Enter the path where the folder is located.**
- 3. Press [OK].**

If the format of the entered path is not correct, a message appears. Press [Exit], and then enter the path again.

Note

- Enter the path using this format: "\\ServerName\Share- Name\PathName".
- You can also enter an IPv4 address.
- You can enter a path using up to 128 characters.

Locating the SMB folder using Browse Network

This section describes how to locate the SMB folder using Browse Network.

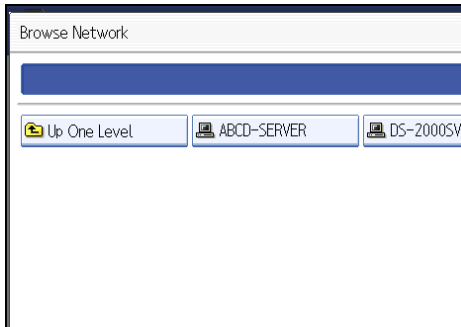
1. Press [Browse Network].

The client computers sharing the same network as the machine appear.

Network display only lists client computers you are authorized to access.

2. Select a client computer.

Shared folders under it appear.



You can press [Up One Level] to switch between levels.

3. Select the folder you want to register.**4. Press [OK].**

If a Login Screen Appears

This section describes how to log on to the machine if the login screen appears when you try to access a folder by browsing the network.

If you have not specified folder authentication, or if an incorrect user name or password has been entered for folder authentication, the login screen appears.

1. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].

Enter the login user name specified for folder authentication.

2. Enter the password, and then press [OK].

The path to the selected folder appears.

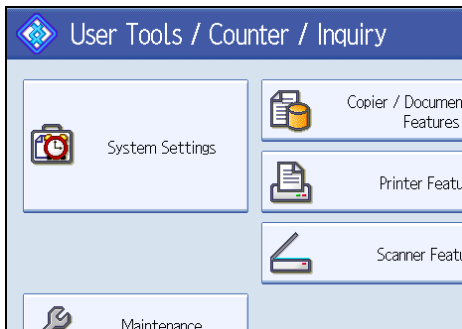
If a message appears, press [Exit], and then enter the login user name and password again.

Changing an SMB Folder

This section describes how to change settings of the registered SMB folder.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

6. Select the name whose folder you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Folder].

8. Select the items you want to change.

When specifying a folder, enter the path directly or select it by referencing the network. For more information, see "Locating the SMB folder manually" and "Locating the SMB folder using Browse Network".

9. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.

10. Press [Exit].

11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Exit].

13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Changing the protocol

This section describes how to change the protocol.

1. Press [FTP] or [NCP].



A confirmation message appears.

2. Press [Yes].

Changing the protocol will clear all settings made under the previous protocol.

3. Enter each item again.

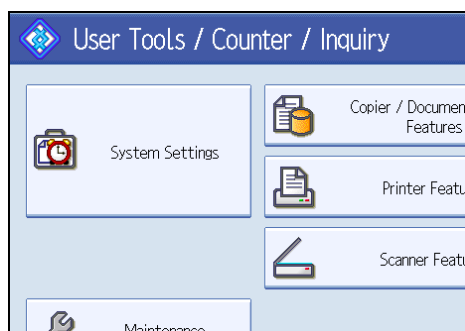
5

Deleting an SMB registered folder

This section describes how to delete the registered SMB folder.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

6. Select the name whose folder you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Folder].
8. Press the protocol which is not currently selected.
A confirmation message appears.
9. Press [Yes].
10. Press [OK].
11. Press [Exit].
12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

- To delete the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

📖 Reference

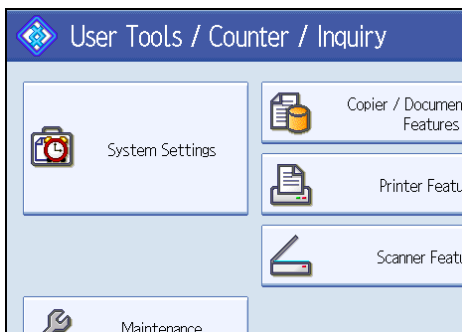
- p.243 "Registering Names"

5

Registering an FTP Folder

This section describes how to register an FTP folder.

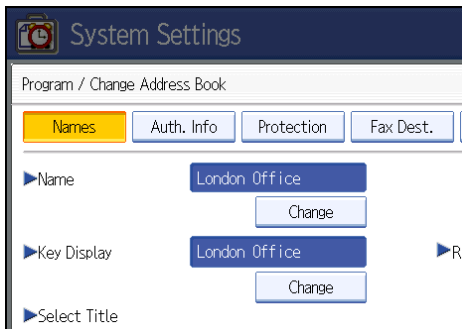
1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose folder you want to register.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next].



8. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] on the right side of Folder Authentication.

When [Do not Specify] is selected, the FTP User Name and FTP Password that you have specified in Default User Name/Password (Send) of File Transfer settings applies. For details, see "File Transfer".

5

9. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".

10. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].

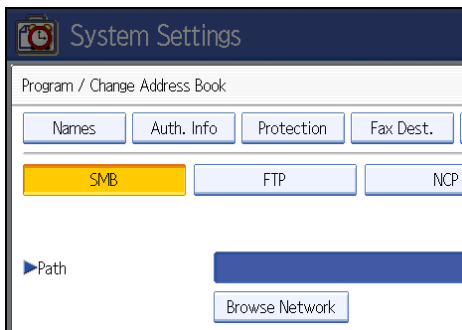
11. Press [Change] under "Login Password".

12. Enter the password, and then press [OK].

13. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].

14. Press [Folder].

15. Press [FTP].



16. Press [Change] under "Server Name".

17. Enter the server name, and then press [OK].

18. Press [Change] under "Path".

19. Enter the path, and then press [OK].

You can enter an absolute path, using this format: "\\user\home\username"; or a relative path, using this format: "directory\sub-directory".

If you leave the path blank, the login directory is assumed to be the current working directory.

You can also enter an IPv4 address.

You can enter a path using up to 256 characters.

20. To change the port number, press [Change] under "Port Number".

21. Enter the port number using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

You can enter 1 to 65535.

22. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.

23. Press [Exit].

If the connection test fails, check the settings, and then try again.

24. Press [OK].

25. Press [Exit].

26. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 191 characters for the user name.
- You can enter up to 128 characters for the password.
- You can enter a server name using up to 64 characters.
- If User Authentication is specified, contact your administrator.

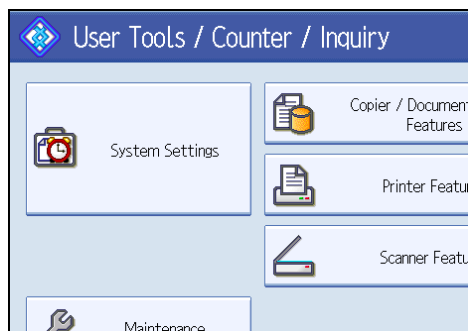
📖 Reference

- p.38 "File Transfer"
- p.243 "Registering Names"

Changing an FTP folder

This section describes how to change the registered FTP folder.

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**
- 2. Press [System Settings].**



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose folder you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Folder].
8. Select the items you want to change.
9. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.
10. Press [Exit].
11. Press [OK].
12. Press [Exit].
13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

📖 Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Changing the protocol

This section describes how to change the protocol.

1. Press [SMB] or [NCP].

A confirmation message appears.

2. Press [Yes].

Changing the protocol will clear all settings made under the previous protocol.

3. Enter each item again.

Changing the registered FTP folder

This section describes how to change the registered FTP folder.

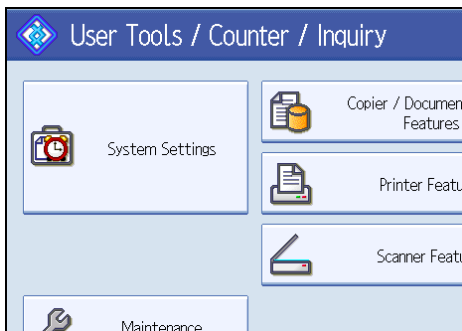
1. Press [Change] under "Port Number".
2. Enter the new port number, and then press the [#] key.
3. Press [Change] under "Server Name".
4. Enter the new server name, and then press [OK].
5. Press [Change] under "Path".
6. Enter the new path, and then press [OK].

Deleting an FTP folder

5

This section describes how to delete the registered FTP folder.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose folder you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Folder].

8. Press the protocol which is not currently selected.

A confirmation message appears.

9. Press [Yes].

10. Press [OK].

11. Press [Exit].

12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To delete a name entirely, see "Registering Names".

Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

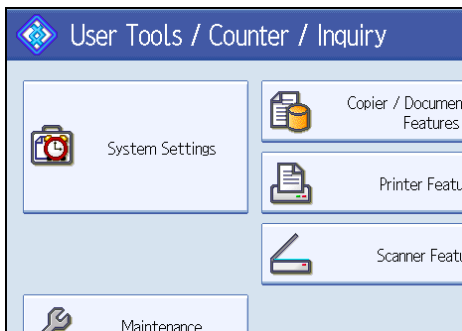
5

Registering an NCP folder

This section describes how to register an NCP folder.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

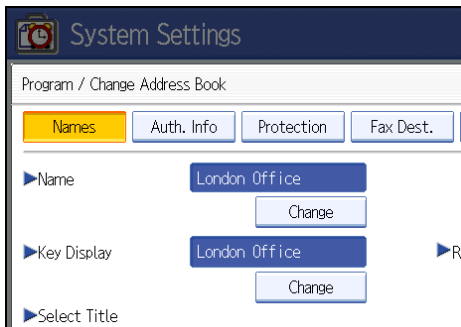
4. Press [Address Book Management].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

6. Press the name you want to register or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

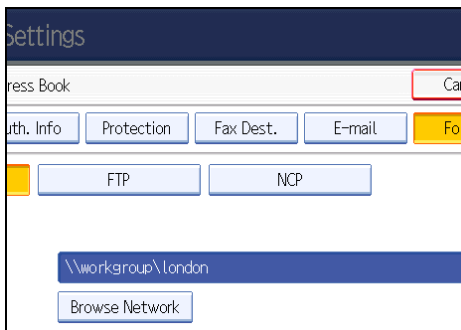
7. Press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next].



8. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] on the right side of Folder Authentication.

When [Do not Specify] is selected, the NCP User Name and NCP Password that you have specified in Default User Name/Password (Send) of File Transfer settings applies. For details, see "File Transfer".

9. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".
10. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].
11. Press [Change] under "Login Password".
12. Enter the password, and then press [OK].
13. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].
14. Press [Folder].
15. Press [NCP].



16. Select "Connection Type".

If you want to specify a folder in an NDS tree, press [NDS]. If you want to specify a folder on a NetWare server, press [Bindery].

If you have set "Connection Type" to [NDS], enter the user name followed by the name of the context where the user object is located. If the user name is "user" and the context name is "context", enter "user.context".

17. Specify the path.

For details about how to specify the path manually, see "Locating the NCP folder manually".

For details about how to specify the path using Browse Network, see "Locating the NCP folder using Browse Network".

18. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.

19. Press [Exit].

20. Press [OK].

21. Press [Exit].

22. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 128 characters for the user name.
- You can enter up to 64 characters for the password.
- To specify a folder, you can either enter the path manually or locate the folder by browsing the network.
- If User Authentication is specified, contact your administrator.

Reference

- p.38 "File Transfer"
- p.243 "Registering Names"

5

Locating the NCP folder manually

This section describes how to locate the NCP folder manually.

- 1. Press [Change] under "Path".**
- 2. Enter the path where the folder is located.**
- 3. Press [OK].**
- 4. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.**
- 5. Press [Exit].**

Note

- If you set "Connection Type" to [NDS], and if the NDS tree name is "tree", the name of the context including the volume is "context", the volume name is "volume" and the folder name is "folder", then the path will be "\\tree\volume.context\folder".
- If you set "Connection Type" to [Bindery], and if the NetWare server name is "server", the volume name is "volume" and the folder name is "folder", then the path will be "\\server\volume\folder".
- You can enter a path using up to 256 characters.
- If the connection test fails, check the settings, and then try again.

Locating the NCP folder using Browse Network

This section describes how to locate the NCP folder using Browse Network.

1. Press [Browse Network].
2. If you have set "Connection Type" to [NDS], a list of items in the NDS tree appears. If you have set "Connection Type" to [Bindery], a list of items on the NetWare server appears.
3. Search for the destination folder in the NDS tree or NetWare server.

You can press [Up One Level] to switch between levels.

4. Select the folder you want to register.
5. Press [OK].

Note

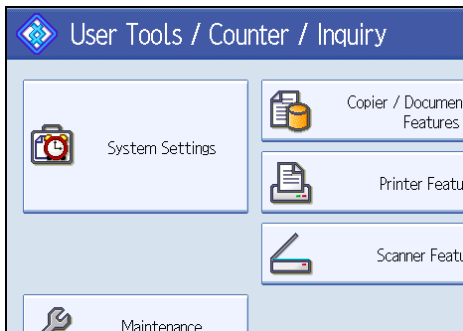
- Only the folders you are allowed to access appear in [Browse Network].
- If the languages used on the machine and the destination you want to view differ, the items in the list may not appear correctly.
- Up to 100 items can be displayed in the list.

5

Changing an NCP registered folder

This section describes how to change the registered NCP folder.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the user of the registered folder you want to change.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Folder].

8. Select "Connection Type".

If you want to specify a folder in an NDS tree, press [NDS]. If you want to specify a folder on a NetWare server, press [Bindery].

9. Specify the folder.

To specify a folder, you can either enter the path manually or locate the folder by browsing the network.

10. Press [Connection Test] to check the path is set correctly.

11. Press [Exit].

12. Press [OK].

13. Press [Exit].

14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To change the name, key display and title, see "Registering Names".

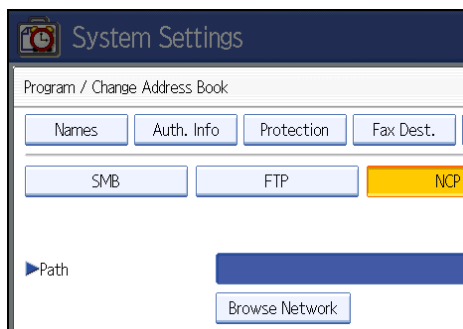
Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Changing the protocol

This section describes how to change the protocol.

1. Press [SMB] or [FTP].



2. A confirmation message appears. Press [Yes].

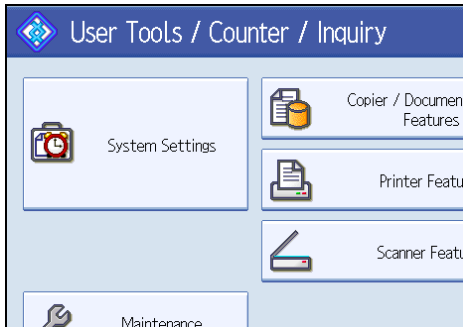
Changing the protocol will clear all settings made under the previous protocol.

3. Enter each item again.

Deleting an NCP folder

This section describes how to delete the registered NCP folder.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select a user of the folder you want to delete.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Folder].
8. Press the protocol which is not currently selected.
9. Press [Yes].
10. Press [OK].
11. Press [Exit].
12. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

- To delete a name entirely, see "Registering Names".

📖 Reference

- p.243 "Registering Names"

Registering Names to a Group

This section describes how to register names to a group.

You can register names to a group to enable easy management of e-mail addresses and folders for each group.

To add names to a group, the groups must be registered beforehand.

★ Important

- When using Scan to Folder function, you cannot send scan files to a group with over 50 folders registered.
- The maximum number of destinations registerable to a group is 100.

↓ Note

- You can set a protection code to prevent unauthorized access to the folders registered in a group. For details, see "Registering a Protection Code".

📖 Reference

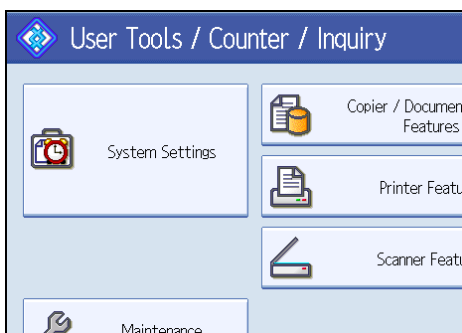
- p.300 "Registering a Protection Code"

5

Registering a Group

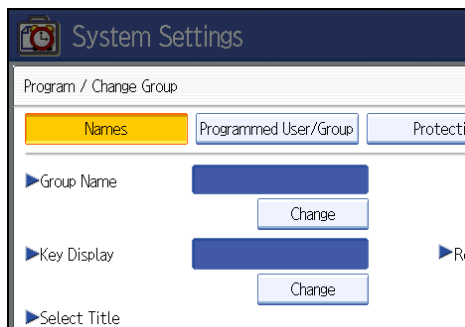
This section describes how to register a group.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Press [New Program].

7. Press [Change] under "Group Name".



8. Enter the group name, and then press [OK].

The Key Display name is set automatically.

9. Press the title key under "Select Title", if necessary.

The keys you can select are as follows:

- [Frequent]: Added to the page that is displayed first.
- [AB], [CD], [EF], [GH], [IJK], [LMN], [OPQ], [RST], [UVW], [XYZ], [1] to [10].

Added to the list of items in the selected title.

You can select [Frequent] and one more page for each title.

10. When you want to change the key display, press [Change] under "Key Display".

11. Enter the key display, and then press [OK].

12. Press [OK].

13. Press [Exit].

14. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Registering Names to a Group

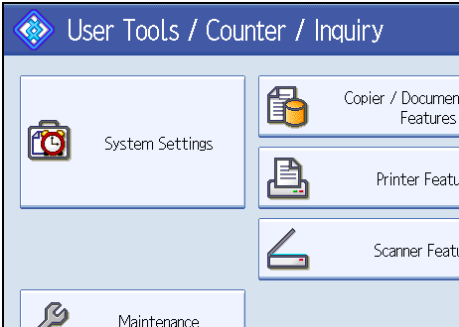
This section describes how to register names to a registered group.

You can put names that have been registered in the Address Book into a group.

When registering new names, you can also register groups at the same time.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book Management].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

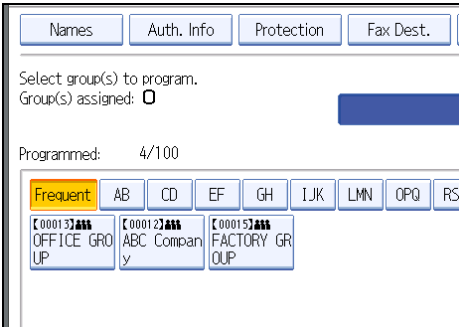
6. Select the name to register in a group.

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

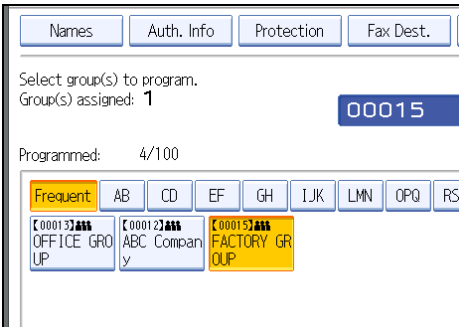
You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Add to Group].

8. Select a group to which you want to add the name.



The group key that you have selected becomes highlighted, and the name is added to it.

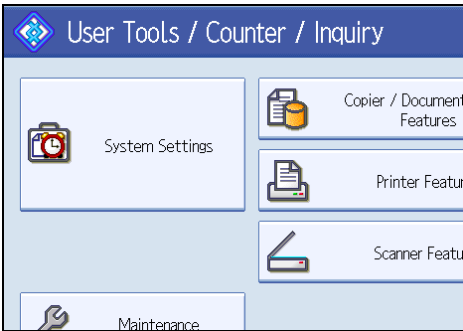


- 9. Press [OK].
- 10. Press [Exit].
- 11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Adding a Group to Another Group

This section describes how to add a group to another group.

- 1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
- 2. Press [System Settings].

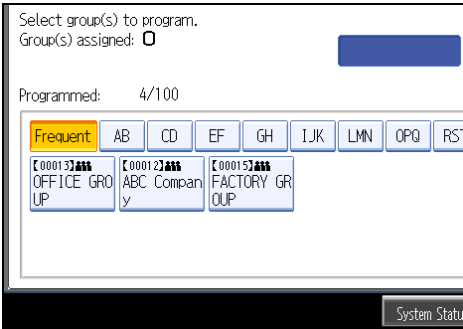


- 3. Press [Administrator Tools].
- 4. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
- 5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
- 6. Select the group that you want to put into another group.

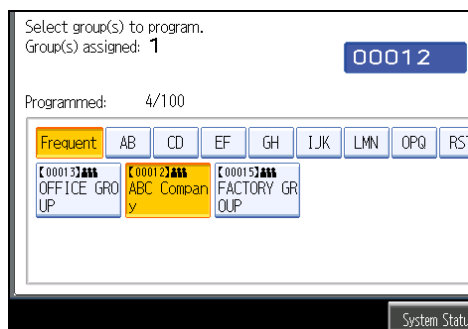
Press the group key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

- 7. Press [Add to Group].
- 8. Select the group to which you want to add.



The group key that you have selected becomes highlighted, and the group is added to it.



9. Press [OK].
10. Press [Exit].
11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

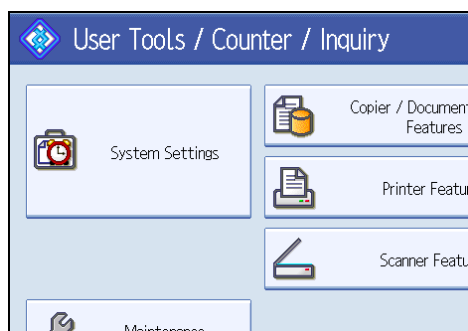
5

Displaying Names Registered in a Group

This section describes how to display names registered in a group.

You can check the names or groups registered in each group.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the group where the members you want to check is registered.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

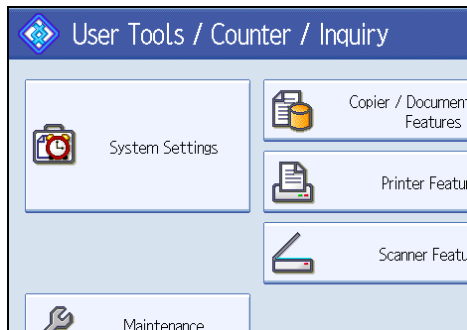
7. Press [Programmed User/Group].

All the names registered will be displayed.

8. Press [OK].**9. Press [Exit].****10. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**

Removing a Name from a Group

This section describes how to remove a name from a group.

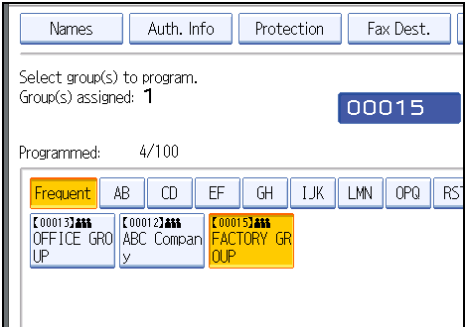
1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.**2. Press [System Settings].****3. Press [Administrator Tools].****4. Press [Address Book Management].****5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.****6. Select the name to remove from a group.**

Press the name key, or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

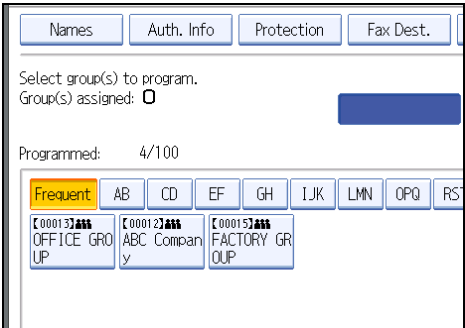
7. Press [Add to Group].

8. Select the group from which you want to remove the name.



The group key is deselected and the name is removed from it.

9. Press [OK].



10. Press [Exit].

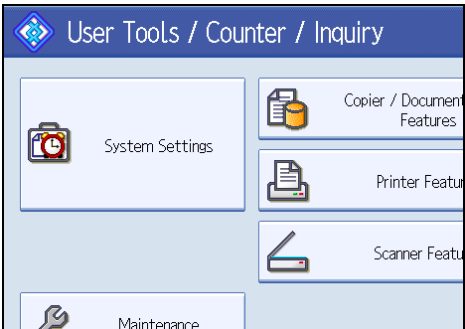
11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Deleting a Group Within Another Group

This section describes how to delete a group within another group.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].

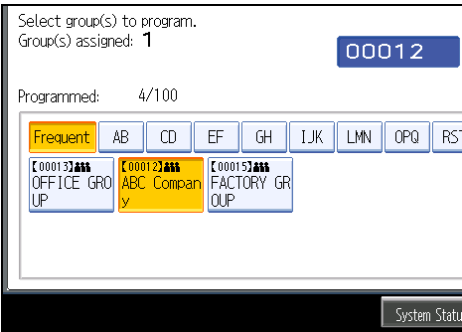


- 3. Press [Administrator Tools].
- 4. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
- 5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
- 6. Select the group that you want to delete from.

Press the group key, or enter the registered number during the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

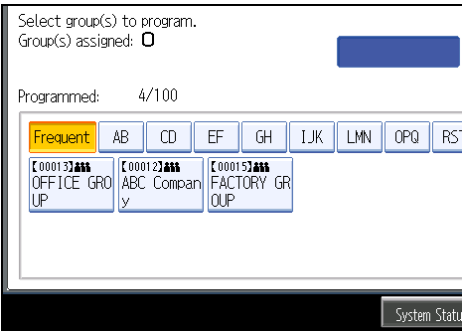
- 7. Press [Add to Group].
- The keys of groups in which the group is registered appear highlighted.
- 8. Select the group that you want to delete from.



5

The group key is deselected and the group is deleted from it.

- 9. Press [OK].

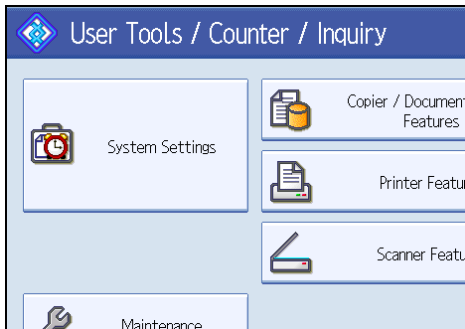


- 10. Press [Exit].
- 11. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Changing a Group Name

This section describes how to change a group name.

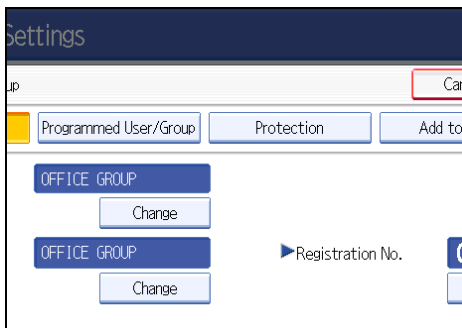
1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Press the group key you want to change.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. To change the group name and key display, press [Change] under "Group Name" or "Key Display".

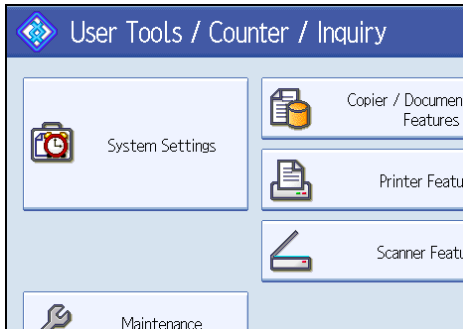


8. Enter the new group name or key display, and then press [OK].
9. To change the title, press the title key under "Select Title".
10. To change the registration number, press [Change] under "Registration No.".
11. Enter the new registration number using the number keys.
12. Press the [#] key.
13. Press [OK].
14. Press [Exit].
15. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Deleting a Group

This section describes how to delete a group.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].
5. Press [Delete].
6. Press a group key you want to delete.
You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.
7. Press [Yes].
8. Press [Exit].
9. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Registering a Protection Code

This section describes how to register a Protection Code.

You can stop sender's names or folders being accessed by setting a protection code.

You can use this function to protect the following:

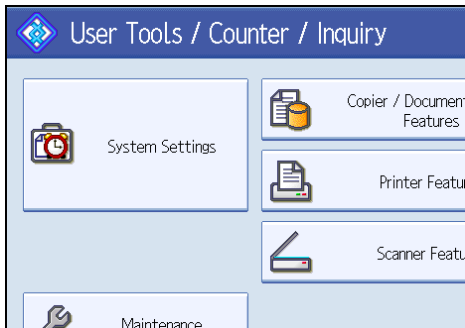
- Folders
You can prevent unauthorized access to folders.
- Sender's names
You can prevent misuse of sender's names.

Registering a Protection Code to a Single User

5

This section describes how to register a Protection code to a single user.

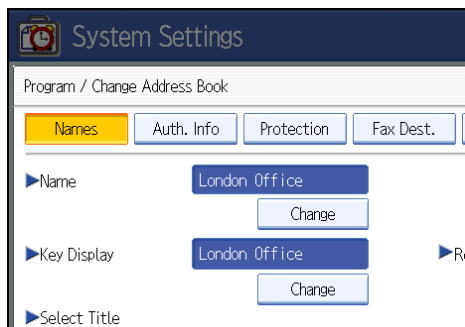
1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



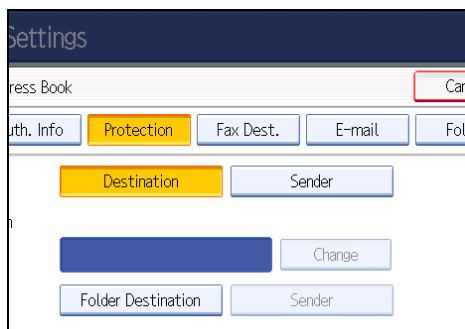
3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Select the name whose protection code you want to register.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Protection].



8. Press [Destination] or [Sender] under "Use Name as".



Both [Destination] and [Sender] can be selected at the same time.

9. Press [Change] under "Protection Code".

10. Enter a protection code using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Exit].

13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

↓ Note

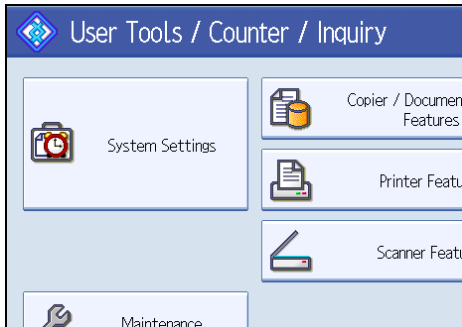
- Specify a protection code of up to eight digits. You can also specify "Protection" without specifying a protection code.
- To change the protection code settings, repeat step 3 to 11.

Registering a Protection Code to a Group User

This section describes how to register a Protection Code to a Group User.

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].

4. Press [Address Book: Program / Change / Delete Group].

5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.

5

6. Press the group key you want to register or enter the registered number using the number keys.

You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.

7. Press [Protection].

8. Press [Folder Destination] under "Protection Object".

9. Press [Change] under "Protection Code".

10. Enter a protection code using the number keys, and then press the [#] key.

11. Press [OK].

12. Press [Exit].

13. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- Specify a protection code of up to eight digits. You can also specify "Protection" without specifying a protection code.
- To change the protection code settings, repeat step 3 to 11.

Registering SMTP and LDAP Authentication

This section describes how to register SMTP and LDAP Authentication.

SMTP Authentication

This section describes how to register SMTP Authentication.

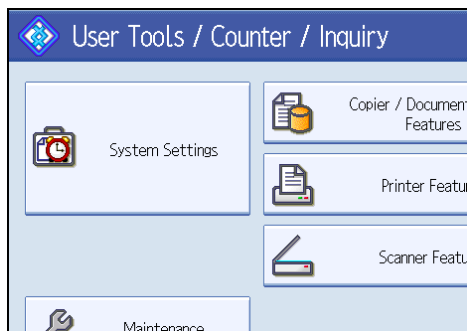
For each user registered in the Address Book, you can register a login user name and login password to be used when accessing an SMTP server.

To use an SMTP server, you need to program it beforehand.

★ Important

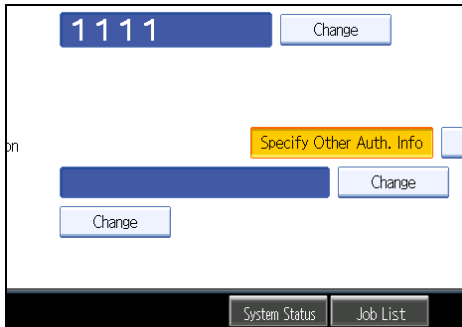
- When [Do not Specify] is selected for SMTP Authentication the User Name and Password that you have specified in SMTP Authentication of File Transfer settings applies. For details, see "File Transfer".

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Press the name you want to register or enter the registered number using the number keys.
You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.
7. Press [Auth. Info].
8. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] under "SMTP Authentication".

9. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".



10. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].

11. Press [Change] under "Login Password".

12. Enter the password, and then press [OK].

13. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].

14. Press [OK].

15. Press [Exit].

16. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 191 characters for the user name.
- When using POP before SMTP Authentication, you can enter up to 63 characters.
- You can enter up to 128 characters for the password.
- To change the SMTP Authentication settings, repeat step 3 to 14.

Reference

- p.38 "File Transfer"
- p.243 "Registering Names"

LDAP Authentication

This section describes how to register LDAP Authentication.

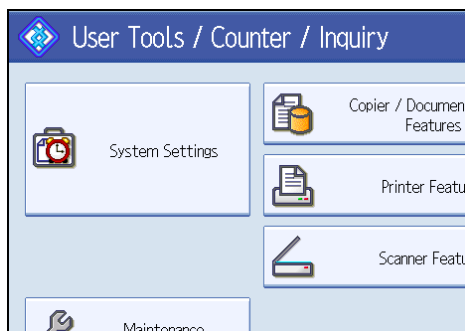
For each user registered in the Address Book, you can register a login user name and login password to be used when accessing an LDAP server.

To use an LDAP server, you need to program it beforehand. For details, see "Programming the LDAP server".

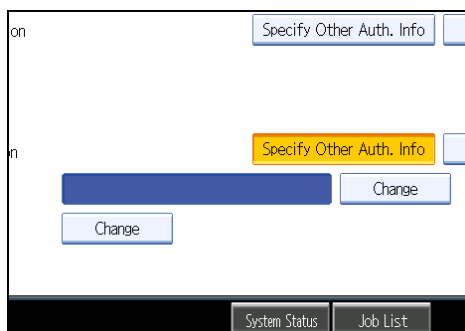
★ Important

- When [Do not Specify] is selected for LDAP Authentication, the User Name and Password that you have specified in Program / Change LDAP Server of Administrator Tools settings applies. For details, see "Programming the LDAP server".

1. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.
2. Press [System Settings].



3. Press [Administrator Tools].
4. Press [Address Book Management].
5. Check that [Program / Change] is selected.
6. Press the name you want to register or enter the registered number using the number keys.
You can search by the registered name, fax number, folder name, e-mail address, or IP-Fax destination.
7. Press [Auth. Info], and then press [▼Next].
8. Press [Specify Other Auth. Info] under "LDAP Authentication".
9. Press [Change] under "Login User Name".



10. Enter the login user name, and then press [OK].
11. Press [Change] under "Login Password".
12. Enter the password, and then press [OK].

13. Enter the password again to confirm, and then press [OK].

14. Press [OK].

15. Press [Exit].

16. Press the [User Tools/Counter] key.

Note

- To register the name, see "Registering Names".
- You can enter up to 128 characters for the user name.
- You can enter up to 128 characters for the password.
- To change the LDAP Authentication settings, repeat step 3 to 14.

Reference

- p.55 "Programming the LDAP server"
- p.243 "Registering Names"

6. Special Operations under Windows

This chapter describes how to print files directly from Windows, or print with Bluetooth devices.

Printing Files Directly from Windows

You can print files directly using Windows commands. For example, you can print PostScript files for PostScript 3.

Windows 2000/XP, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

You can print files directly using `lpr`, `rcp`, `ftp` or `sftp` command.

Windows Vista, Windows Server 2008

You can print files directly using `lpr`, `ftp` or `sftp` command.

Setup

Follow the procedure below to make network environment settings.

1. **Enable TCP/IP with the control panel, and then set up the printer's network environment about TCP/IP including IP addresses.**

TCP/IP of the printer is set as default.

2. **Install a TCP/IP in Windows to set up the network environment.**

Consult the network administrator for the local setting information.

3. **To print under Windows 2000/XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, install "Printing service for UNIX" as the network application.**

Note

- For details about setting the IPv4 address of the printer using DHCP, see "Using DHCP".

Reference

- p.317 "Using DHCP"

Using a Host Name Instead of an IPv4 Address

When a host name is defined, you can specify a printer by host name instead of IP address. The host names vary depending on the network environment.

When using DNS

Use the host name set to the data file on the DNS server.

When setting the IPv4 address of a printer using DHCP

Use the printer name on the configuration page as the host name.

In other cases

Add the IP address and host name of the network printer to the hosts file on the computer used for printing. Methods of addition vary depending on operating systems.

1. Open the hosts file using memo pad files, for instance.

The hosts file is in the following folder:

`\WINNT\SYSTEM32\DRIVERS\ETC\HOSTS`

"\WINNT" is the directory of the installation destination for Windows 2000/XP/Vista, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008.

2. Add an IPv4 or IPv6 address and host name to the hosts file using the following format:

`192.168.15.16 host # NP`

"192.168.15.16" is the IPv4 address, "host" is the printer's host name, and "#NP" is replaced by comments. Insert a space or tab between "192.168.15.16" and "host", between "host" and "#NP" respectively, using one line for this format.

`2001:DB::100 host # NP`

"2001:DB::100" is the IPv6 address, "host" is the printer's host name, and "#NP" is replaced by comments. Insert a space or tab between "2001:DB::100" and "host", between "host" and "#NP" respectively, using one line for this format.

3. Save the file.

↓ Note

- When using a host name under Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, or Windows Vista, with IPv6 protocol, perform host name resolution using an external DNS server. The host file cannot be used.

Printing Commands

The following explains printing operations using the "lpr", "rcp", "ftp" and "sftp" commands.

Enter commands using the command prompt window. The location of the command prompts varies depending on operating systems:

- Windows 2000
[Start] - [Programs] - [Accessories] - [Command Prompt]
- Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008
[Start] - [All Programs] - [Accessories] - [Command Prompt]

Note

- Match the data format of the file to be printed with the emulation mode of the printer.
- If the message "print requests full" appears, no print jobs can be accepted. Try again when sessions end. For each command, the amount of possible sessions is indicated as follows:
 - lpr: 5 (When the spool printing function is available: 10)
 - rcp, rsh: 5
 - ftp: 3
 - sftp: 3
- Enter the file name in a format including the path from the directory executing commands.
- The "option" specified in a command is an intrinsic printer option and its syntax is similar to printing from UNIX. For details, see UNIX Supplement.

lpr**When specifying a printer by IP address**

```
c:> lpr -Sprinter's IP address [-Poption] [-ol] \pass name\file name
```

When using a host name instead of an IP address

```
c:> lpr -Sprinter's host name [-Poption] [-ol] \pass name\file name
```

When printing a binary file, add the "-ol" option (lowercase O, and lowercase L).

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a PostScript file named "file 1" located in the "C:\PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

```
c:> lpr -Shost -Pfiletype=RPS -ol C:\PRINT\file1
```

Printing from the virtual printer

```
C:\>lpr -S "printer's IP address" -P[virtual printer name] [-ol] \path name\file name
```

Reference

- For details about the virtual printer configuration, see "Using the Virtual Printer", Printer Reference.

rcp

First, register the printer's host name in the hosts file.

```
c:> rcp [-b] \pass name\file name [pass name\file name...] printer's host name:
[option]
```

In file names, "*" and "?" can be used as wild cards.

When printing a binary file, add the "-b" option.

When using a printer with the host name "host" to print a PostScript file named "file 1" or "file 2" located in the "C:\PRINT" directory, the command line is as follows:

```
c:> rcp -b C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2 host:filetype=RPS
```

Printing from the virtual printer

```
c:> rcp [-b] \path name\file name [\path name\file name...] printer's host name:  
[virtual printer name]
```

Reference

- For details about the virtual printer configuration, see "Using the Virtual Printer", Printer Reference.

ftp / sftp

Use the "put" or "mput" command according to the number of files to be printed.

When one file is printed

```
ftp> put \pass name\file name [option]
```

Printing from the virtual printer

```
ftp> put \path name\file name [virtual printer name]
```

When multiple files are printed

```
ftp> mput \pass name\file name [\pass name\file name...] [option]
```

Follow the procedure below to print using the "ftp" command.

1. **Formulate the printer's IP address or the host name of the hosts file printer as an argument and use the "ftp" command.**

```
% ftp "printer's IP address"
```

2. **Enter the user name and password, and then press the [Enter] key.**

For details about the user name and password, consult your network administrator.

User:

Password:

When user authentication is set, enter a login user name and password.

3. **When printing a binary file, set the file mode to binary.**

```
ftp> bin
```

When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.

4. **Specify files to be printed.**

The following shows the examples of printing a PostScript file named "file 1" in the "C:\PRINT" directory and printing file 1 and file 2.

```
ftp> put C:\PRINT\file1 filetype=RPS
```

```
ftp> mput C:\PRINT\file1 C:\PRINT\file2
```

5. Quit ftp.

```
ftp> bye
```

↓ Note

- "=", " ", "_", and ";" cannot be used for filenames. File names will be read as option strings.
- If you are using ftp, you cannot specify an option using the "mput" command.
- If you are using ftp, you cannot specify an option using the "pwd" command.
- If you are using sftp, you cannot specify an option using the "cd" command.
- If you are using sftp, you cannot specify an option using the "pwd" command.
- To use SFTP, you must create an open key for SSH communication. Use Web Image Monitor to create an open key. For details, see Web Image Monitor help.
- If personal authentication (Basic, Windows, LDAP, or Integrated Server Authentication) is enabled, only authenticated users (users authenticated by login user name and password) can log on.
- For "mput" command, "*" and "?" can be used as wild cards in file names.
- When printing a binary file in ASCII mode, print may not come out correctly.
- For details about login user name and password, see Security Reference, which is the administrator's manual.
- For details about the virtual printer configuration, see "Using the Virtual Printer", Printer Reference.

Printing with Bluetooth Connection

This describes how to print with Bluetooth devices.

Supported Profiles

The following profiles are supported:

- SPP (Serial Port Profile)
- HCRP (Hardcopy Cable Profile)
- BIP (Basic Imaging Profile)

Restrictions on SPP, HCRP

- A maximum of two Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computers can be connected at the same time using the Bluetooth interface: one by SPP, one by HCRP.
- When connecting more than one Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computer at the same time, the first device that establishes connection is selected. When selecting the connection between the other devices, cancel the first established connection.
- SPP connection does not support bidirectional communications.
- HCRP connection supports bidirectional communications.

Restrictions on BIP

- For BIP connection, a module including PostScript 3 must be installed in the machine.
- Only one Bluetooth adaptor or Bluetooth-equipped computer can be connected via BIP.
- Only JPEG images can be printed using BIP.
- User codes are disabled for BIP.
- You cannot print if print functions are restricted.
- Some printers do not support BIP.

Instructions in this manual relate to printing via HCRP. To print using SPP or BIP, see the Help supplied with the Bluetooth adapter you want to use, or the Microsoft Web site.

Adding a Bluetooth Printer

The following procedures explain how to install a Bluetooth printer on a computer that is running Windows XP or Windows Vista.

If your computer is running SP1 or an earlier version of Windows XP, there are additional applications that you must install. For details about these, see the Help supplied with your Bluetooth device.

★ Important

- To perform a printer installation, your account must have **Manage Printers** permission. Log on as a member of the **Administrators** group.
- To connect to a Bluetooth printer, your computer must have a Bluetooth device installed. Make sure a Bluetooth device is installed on your computer.

Windows XP

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Printers and Faxes].

The [Printers and Faxes] window appears.

2. Click [Add a printer].

The [Add Printer Wizard] window opens.

3. Click [Next >].

4. Click [Bluetooth Printer], and then click [Next >].

The computer begins searching for available Bluetooth printers.

If a new printer is discovered, the [Found New Hardware Wizard] window appears. To ignore a discovered device and continue searching, click [Cancel]. The computer resumes searching for other available Bluetooth printers.

5. Click [No, I will not connect], and then click [Next >].

6. Click [Install from a list or specific location (Advanced)], and then click [Next >].

7. Insert the CD-ROM provided with this machine into your computer's CD-ROM drive, select the [Search removable media (floppy, CD-ROM...)] check box, and then click [Next >].

8. If the [Hardware Installation] window appears, click [Continue].

9. If the installation was successful, click [Finish].

10. Select [Test Print], and then click [Next >].

11. Click [Finish].

↓ Note

- Actual Bluetooth printer operations will vary according to your Bluetooth device and/or Bluetooth-installed computer. For details, see the Help supplied with your Bluetooth device and/or Bluetooth-equipped computer.
- After printing the test page, check it, and then click [Close] to close the window.
- If there is a problem with the test page, click [Troubleshooting] in the test print window.

Windows Vista

★ Important

- To perform a printer installation, your account must have **Manage Printers** permission. Log on as a member of the **Administrators** group.

1. On the [Start] menu, click [Control Panel].
2. In the “Hardware and Sound” area, click [Printers].
3. In the top part of the window, click [Add a printer].
4. In the [Add Printer] window, select [Add a network, wireless or Bluetooth printer], and then click [Next].

The computer begins searching for available Bluetooth devices.

5. From the list of discovered devices, select the printer you want to use, and then click [Next >].

All discovered wireless printers appear in the list of discovered printers, not only Bluetooth printers.

Make sure the printer you select is a Bluetooth printer.

6. Insert the CD-ROM provided with this machine into your computer's CD-ROM drive, and then click [Browse my computer for driver software (advanced)] on the [Found New Hardware] display.
7. In the [Found New Hardware] window, select the printer driver you want to use, and then click [Next].

The printer driver installation starts.

8. If the [Windows Security] window appears, click [Install this driver software anyway].
9. Click [Close].
10. If you want to change the printer name, enter the new name in the [Printer Name Settings] window.
11. If you want to print a test page, click [Printing Test Page] on the “Test Print” page.

Otherwise, click [Finish].

↓ Note

- If you print the test page, after checking it, click [Close] to close the test print window.
- If there is a problem with the test page, click [Troubleshooting Printer Problems] in the test print window.

7. Appendix

When Using Windows Terminal Service/Citrix Presentation Server

The following explains how to use Windows Terminal Service and Citrix Presentation Server.

Operating Environment

The following operating systems and MetaFrame versions are supported.

Windows 2000 Server / Advanced Server

- Citrix Presentation Server 4.0/4.5

Windows Server 2003/2003 R2

- Citrix Presentation Server 4.0/4.5

Supported Printer Drivers

When Windows Terminal Service is operating

- PCL drivers
- PostScript 3
- RPCS drivers

Note

- Some RPCS printer driver functions do not work if Windows Terminal Service is installed.

Limitations

The following limitations apply to the Windows Terminal Service environment.

These limitations are built in Windows Terminal Service or Citrix Presentation Server.

Windows Terminal Service

In the Windows Terminal Service environment, some of the printer driver's functions are unavailable. In an environment where Windows Terminal Service is installed, some of the printer driver's functions are unavailable, even if any function of Windows Terminal Service is not used. When you install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client in an environment where the Terminal Service is running on the Windows 2000 Server family computer, be sure to install it using the install mode. The following are the two methods of installation using the install mode:

1. Use [Add/Remove Programs] in [Control Panel] to install SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.
2. Enter the following command in the MS-DOS command prompt:

```
CHANGE USER /INSTALL
```

To quit the install mode, enter the following command in the MS-DOS command prompt:

```
CHANGE USER /EXECUTE
```

Citrix Presentation Server's [Auto-creating client printers]

Using [Auto-creating client printers] can select a logical printer created by copying the client's local printer data to the MetaFrame server. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

- The settings for optional equipment will not be stored in the server after the equipment is disconnected. The settings for optional equipment will be restored to its defaults each time the client computer logs on to the server.
- When printing a large number of bitmap images or using the server in a WAN environment over dial-up lines such as ISDN, printing may not be possible or errors may occur, depending on data transfer rates.

Citrix Presentation Server's [Printer driver replication]

Using [Printer driver replication] can distribute printer drivers across all servers in a server farm. We strongly recommend testing this function in your network environment before using it for your work.

- If the printer drivers are not properly copied, install them directly onto each server.

Using DHCP

You can use the printer in a DHCP environment. You can also register the printer NetBIOS name on a WINS server when it is running.

- Printers that register the printer NetBIOS name on a WINS server must be configured for the WINS server.
- Supported DHCP servers are Microsoft DHCP Server included with Windows 2000 Server, and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, and Windows Server 2008, and the DHCP server included with NetWare and UNIX.
- If you do not use the WINS server, reserve the printer's IP address in the DHCP server so the same IP address is assigned every time.
- To use the WINS server, change the WINS server setting to "active" using the control panel.
- Using the WINS server, you can configure the host name via the remote network printer port.
- DHCP relay-agent is not supported. If you use DHCP relay-agent on a network via ISDN, it will result in increased line charges. This is because your computer connects to the ISDN line whenever a packet is transferred from the printer.
- If there is more than one DHCP server, use the same setting for all servers. The machine operates using data from the DHCP server that responds first.
- DHCP servers can operate in an IPv6 environment, but they cannot be configured to allocate IPv6 addresses or obtain host names.

7

Using AutoNet

If the printer IPv4 address is not automatically assigned by the DHCP server, a temporary IP address starting with 169.254 and not used on the network can be automatically selected by the printer.

Note

- The IP address assigned by the DHCP server is given priority over that selected by AutoNet.
- You can confirm the current IPv4 address on the configuration page.
- When AutoNet is running, the NetBIOS name is not registered on the WINS server.
- The machine cannot communicate with devices that do not have the AutoNet function. However, this machine can communicate with Macintosh computers running Mac OS X 10.2.3. or higher.

Configuring the WINS Server

This section explains configuring the WINS server.

The printer can be configured to register its NetBIOS name with a WINS server when the power is turned on. This enables the NetBIOS name of the printer to be specified from SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin even in a DHCP environment.

Note

- The WINS server is supported with Windows 2000 Servers WINS Manager.
- For details about the WINS server settings, see Windows Help.
- If there is no reply from the WINS server, the NetBIOS name is registered by broadcast.
- The NetBIOS name can be entered using up to 13 alphanumeric characters.

Using Web Image Monitor

1. **Start a Web browser.**
2. **Enter "http://(machine's IP address or host name) /" in the address bar to access the printer whose settings you want to change.**
Top Page of Web Image Monitor appears.
3. **Click [Login].**
The dialog box for entering the user name and password appears.
4. **Enter the user name and password, and then click [Login].**
Contact your administrator for information about the settings.
5. **In the left area, click [Configuration], and then click [Network].**
6. **Click [TCP/IP].**
7. **Check that [Enable] is selected for [WINS] in the [Ethernet + Wireless LAN] column, and then enter the WINS server IPv4 address in [Primary WINS Server] and [Secondary WINS Server].**
8. **Click [Apply].**
9. **Quit Web Image Monitor.**

Reference

- p.123 "Using Web Image Monitor"

Using telnet

You can also use telnet to configure WINS.

Use the "wins" command to make the setting with telnet.

 Reference

- p.162 "Remote Maintenance by telnet"

Using the Dynamic DNS Function

Dynamic DNS is a function which dynamically updates (registers and deletes) records (A record, AAAA record, CNAME, and PTR record) managed by the DNS server. When a DNS server is part of the network environment to which this printer, a DNS client, is connected, records can be dynamically updated using this function.

Updating

Updating procedure varies depending on whether the printer IP address is static or acquired by DHCP.

★ Important

- Dynamic update using message authentication (TSIG, SIG(0)) is not supported.

For a static IPv4 setting

If the IP address or host name is changed, the A and PTR records are updated. If the A record is registered, CNAME is also registered. CNAMEs that can be registered are as follows:

- Ethernet and IEEE 802.11
RNPXXXXXX (XXXXXX represents the last 3 hexadecimal bytes of the MAC address)
However, if CNAME (PRNXXXXXX) overlaps with the host name, CNAME will not be registered.

For DHCPv4 settings

As a substitute for the printer, the DHCP server updates the record, and one of the following occurs:

- When the printer acquires the IP address from the DHCP server, the DHCP server updates the A and PTR records.
- When the printer acquires the IP address from the DHCP server, the printer updates the A record, and the DHCP server updates the PTR record.

If the A record is registered, CNAME is also registered. CNAMEs that can be registered are as follows:

- Ethernet and IEEE 802.11
RNPXXXXXX (XXXXXX represents the last 3 hexadecimal bytes of the MAC address)

For IPv6 settings

This machine updates the AAAA record and PTR record.

It also updates CNAME when the AAAA record is updated.

When a stateless address is newly set, it is automatically registered on the DNS server also.

↓ Note

- When the dynamic DNS function is not used, records managed by the DNS server must be updated manually, if the printer's IP address is changed.
- To update the record using the printer, the DNS server has to have one of the following:

- No security settings made.
- If security settings are made, an IP-specified client (this printer) permits updating.

DNS servers targeted for operation

For static IP setting

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher

For DHCP setup, when the printer updates the A record

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher

For DHCP setup, when the DHCP server updates records

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows 2000 Server/Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008 features
- BIND 8.2.3 or higher
- DNS servers with standard NetWare 5 (or a higher version) features

For IPv6 setting

- Microsoft DNS servers with standard Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008 features
- BIND 9.2.3 or higher

DHCP servers targeted for operation

As a substitute for the printer, DHCP servers capable of updating the A record and PTR record are as follows:

- Microsoft DHCP servers with standard Windows 2000 Server (Service Pack 3 or higher versions)/Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008 features
- ISC DHCP 3.0 or higher
- DHCP server with standard NetWare 5 features

Setting the dynamic DNS function

Make settings with telnet using the “dns” command.

 Note

- For details, see "Remote Maintenance by telnet".

 Reference

- p.162 "Remote Maintenance by telnet"

Precautions

Please pay attention to the following when using the network interface board. When configuration is necessary, follow the appropriate procedures below.

Connecting a Dial-Up Router to a Network

When using NetWare (file server)

If the NetWare file server and printer are on opposite sides of a router, packets are sent back and forth continuously, possibly incurring communications charges. Because packet transmission is a feature of NetWare, you need to change the configuration of the router. If the network you are using does not allow you to configure the router, configure the machine instead.

Configuring the router

Filter packets so they do not pass over the dial-up router.

↓ Note

- The MAC address of the filtering printer is printed on the printer configuration page.
- For more information about configuring the printer if the router cannot be configured, see the following instructions.

Configuring the printer with NetWare

1. Following the setup method described earlier in this manual, configure the file server.
2. Set the frame type for NetWare environment.

↓ Note

- For more information about selecting a frame type, see "Interface Settings".

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

Configuring the printer without NetWare

1. When not printing, the network interface board sends packets over the network. Set NetWare to "inactive".

↓ Note

- For more information about selecting a protocol, see "Interface Settings".

📖 Reference

- p.30 "Interface Settings"

When using network utility

If the machine is connected to a network, observe the following points when setting up the machine or changing settings:

For more details, see the operating instructions and Help for the ScanRouter delivery software and DeskTopBinder.

When a dial-up router is connected in a network environment

The settings for the delivery server to be connected must be made appropriately for the machine with the ScanRouter delivery software, Auto Document Link, or DeskTopBinder. In addition, set up connected devices using the I/O settings of the ScanRouter delivery software administration utility.

If the network environment changes, make the necessary changes for the delivery server using the machine, the administration utility of client computers, Auto Document Link, and DeskTopBinder. Also, set the correct information for the connected devices using the I/O settings of the ScanRouter delivery software administration utility.

★ Important

- If the machine is set up to connect to the delivery server via a dial-up router, the router will dial and go online whenever a connection to the delivery server is made. Telephone charges may be incurred.

When connected to a computer that uses dial-up access

- Do not install the ScanRouter delivery software on a computer which uses dial-up access.
- When using the ScanRouter delivery software, DeskTopBinder, Auto Document Link, or a TWAIN driver on a computer with dial-up access, a dial-up connection may be performed when connecting to the delivery server and other equipment, depending on the setup. If the computer is set up to connect to the Internet automatically, the confirmation dialog box will not appear, and telephone charges may be incurred without your being aware of it. To prevent unnecessary connections, the computer should be set up so the confirmation dialog box always appears before establishing a connection. Do not make unnecessary connections when using the above listed software.

NetWare Printing

★ Important

- IPv6 cannot be used on this function.
- IPX/SPX (NetWare) cannot be used under Windows Vista and Windows Server 2008.

Form feed

You should not configure form feed on NetWare. Form feed is controlled by the printer driver on Windows. If NetWare form feed is configured, the printer might not work properly. If you want to change form feed settings, always configure them using Windows.

- Under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, clear the [Form feed] check box on the [NetWare Settings] tab in the printer properties dialog box.

Banner page

You should not configure a banner page on NetWare. If you want to change the banner page setting, always configure it using Windows.

- Under Windows 2000/XP and Windows Server 2003/2003 R2, clear the [Enable banner] check box on the [NetWare Settings] tab in the printer properties dialog box.

Printing after resetting the machine

After resetting the remote printer, the connection from the print server will be cut off for about 30-40 seconds before re-connecting. Depending on the NetWare specification, print jobs may be accepted, but they will not be printed during this interval.

When using the machine as a remote printer, wait about two minutes after resetting before attempting to print.

When the IEEE 802.11 Interface Unit is Installed

Please pay attention to the following when using the IEEE 802.11 interface on the network.

When using the wireless LAN interface on the network, note the following:

When moving the machine

Detach the antennas when relocating the machine locally.

After moving the machine, reattach the antennas, ensuring that:

- The antennas are positioned clear of obstacles.
- There is 40 to 60 mm between the antennas, so that they do not touch.
- The exposure glass cover and the ADF do not knock the antennas.

If the network area provides poor radio environment

Where radio wave conditions are bad, the network may not function due to interrupted or failed connections. When checking the wireless LAN signal and the access point, follow the procedure below to improve the situation:

- Position the access point nearer to the machine.
- Clear the space between access point and machine of obstructions.
- Move radio wave generating appliances, such as microwaves, away from the machine and access point.

Note

- For more information about access point radio wave conditions, refer to the access point manual.

Configuring IEEE 802.1X

IEEE 802.1X can be configured using Web Image Monitor's administrator mode. You can select four types of EAP authentication method: EAP-TLS, LEAP, EAPTTLS and PEAP. Note that each EAP authentication method has different configuration settings and authentication procedures.

Types and requirements of certificates are as follows:

If a certificate is required, configure all settings after installing the certificate.

EAP Types Requiring a "Site Certificate"

EAP-TLS, EAP-TTLS, PEAP (Necessary except LEAP)

EAP Types Requiring a "Site Certificate" and a "Device Certificate"

EAP-TLS, PEAP (Phase 2 is for TLS only)

★ Important

- To set IEEE 802.1X, you must enable SSL. For details about setting SSL configuration, see "Protection Using Encryption", Security Reference.
- To set IEEE 802.1X, you must use Web Image Monitor.

Installing a Site Certificate

7

1. Access the authentication server and obtain the CA certificate.

Methods of obtaining certificates differ according to the operating system you are using.

2. Log on to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.

3. Click [Configuration].

4. [Site Certificate] in the "Security" area.

5. Click [Browse] on the "Site Certificate to Import" window, and then select the CA certificate you obtained.

6. Click [Import].

7. Check that the imported certificate's [Status] shows "Trustworthy".

If [Site Certificate Check] shows [Active], and the [Status] of the certificate shows [Untrustworthy], communication might not be possible.

8. Click [OK].

9. Click [Logout].

10. Quit the Web Image Monitor.

Installing Device Certificate

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.
2. Click [Configuration].
3. Click [Device Certificate] in "Security" area.
4. Click [Certificate 2] on the "Device Certificate" window, and then click [Request].
5. Enter appropriate "Common Name" and "Country Code" on "Certificate Information" page, and then click [OK].
6. "Updating..." appears. Wait for about 2 minutes, and then click [OK].
7. Click [Details], shown in the "Device Certificate" window as the memo pad icon for "Requesting".
8. Select all, and then copy the entire "Text for Requested Certificate" text that is displayed in the "Certificate Status" window.
9. Access the certificate authority server, and then obtain the CA signed certificate using the text copied into "Text for Requested Certificate" windows.

Obtaining the certificate differs depending on the environment you want to use.

10. Click [Certificate 2] on "Device Certificate" window, and then click [Install].
11. Using a text editor, open the CA signed certificate downloaded in step 11, and then copy over all the text.
12. In the [Install Certificate] window, paste all the text copied into the CA signed certificate.
13. Click [OK].
14. "Updating..." appears. Wait for about one or two minutes, and then click [OK].
15. Check that the "Device Certificate" shows "Installed".
16. Click [Certificate 2] on "Certification", and then click [OK].
17. Click [Logout].
18. Quit Web Image Monitor.

↓ Note

- You request two certificates simultaneously, the certificate authority might not display either certificate. Click [Cancel Request] to cancel the request.
- You can select [Certificate 1] and [Certificate 2] in the "Device Certificate" window. Note that if you select [Certificate 1] in the "Device Certificate" window, you must select "Certificate 1" in the "IEEE 802.1X(WPA/WPA2)" drop down menu in the "Certification" window.
- Click [Cancel Request] to cancel the request for the server certificate.
- If "Not found" appears after clicking [OK] in steps 6 and 14, wait one or two minutes, and then click [Refresh].

Setting Items of IEEE 802.1X for Ethernet

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.
2. Click [Configuration].
3. Select [IEEE 802.1X (WPA/WPA2)] in "Security" area.
4. In "User Name", enter the user name set in the RADIUS server.
5. Enter the domain name in "Domain Name".
6. Select "EAP Type". Configurations differ according to the EAP Type.

EAP-TLS

- Make the following settings according to the operating system you are using:
 - Select [On] or [Off] in "Authenticate Server Certificate".
 - Select [On] or [Off] in "Trust Intermediate Certificate Authority".
 - Enter the host name of the RADIUS server on "Server ID".

LEAP

- Click Change in "Password", and then enter the password set in the RADIUS server.

EAP-TTLS

- Click [Change] in "Password", and then enter the password set in the RADIUS server.
- Click [Change] in "Phase 2 User Name", and then enter the user name set in the RADIUS server.
- Select [CHAP], [MSCHAP], [MSCHAPv2], [PAP], or [MD5] in "Phase 2 Method".
- Certain methods might not be available, depending on the RADIUS server you want to use.
- Make the following settings according to the operating system you are using:
 - Select [On] or [Off] in "Authenticate Server Certificate".
 - Select [On] or [Off] in "Trust Intermediate Certificate Authority".
 - Enter the host name of the RADIUS server in "Server ID".

PEAP

- Click [Change] in "Password", and then enter the password set in the RADIUS server.
- Click [Change] on "Phase 2 User Name", and then enter the user name set in the RADIUS server.
- Select [MSCHAPv2] or TLS in "Phase 2 Method".
- When you select [TLS], select the client certificate you want to use in "IEEE 802.1X Client Certificate".
- Make the following settings according to the operating system you are using:
 - Select [On] or [Off] in "Authenticate Server Certificate".
 - Select [On] or [Off] in "Trust Intermediate Certificate Authority".
 - Enter the host name of the RADIUS server on "Server ID".

7. Click [OK].
8. Click [Configuration], and then click [Interface Settings] in the “Interface” area.
9. Select [Active] in “Ethernet Security”.
10. Click [OK].
11. Click [Logout].
12. Quit the Web Image Monitor.

Note

- If there is a problem with settings, you might not be able to communicate with the printer. To identify the problem, print a network summary.
- If you cannot identify the problem, reset the printer interface to normal, and then repeat the procedure from the beginning.

Setting Items of IEEE 802.1X for Wireless LAN

1. Log on to Web Image Monitor in the administrator mode.
2. Click [Configuration].
3. Select [IEEE 802.1X (WPA/WPA2)] in “Security” area.
4. In “User Name”, enter the user name set in the RADIUS server.
5. Enter the domain name in “Domain Name”.
6. Select “EAP Type”. Configurations differ according to the EAP Type.

EAP-TLS

- Make the following settings according to the operating system you are using:
 - Select [On] or [Off] in “Authenticate Server Certificate”.
 - Select [On] or [Off] in “Trust Intermediate Certificate Authority”.
 - Enter the host name of the RADIUS server on “Server ID”.

LEAP

- Click Change in “Password”, and then enter the password set in the RADIUS server.

EAP-TTLS

- Click [Change] in “Password”, and then enter the password set in the RADIUS server.
- Click [Change] in “Phase 2 User Name”, and then enter the user name set in the RADIUS server.
- Select [CHAP], [MSCHAP], [MSCHAPv2], [PAP], or [MD5] in “Phase 2 Method”.
- Certain methods might not be available, depending on the RADIUS server you want to use.
- Make the following settings according to the operating system you are using:
 - Select [On] or [Off] in “Authenticate Server Certificate”.

- Select [On] or [Off] in "Trust Intermediate Certificate Authority".
- Enter the host name of the RADIUS server in "Server ID".

PEAP

- Click [Change] in "Password", and then enter the password set in the RADIUS server.
- Click [Change] on "Phase 2 User Name", and then enter the user name set in the RADIUS server.
- Select [MSCHAPv2] or TLS in "Phase 2 Method".
- When you select [TLS], select the client certificate you want to use in "IEEE 802.1X Client Certificate".
- Make the following settings according to the operating system you are using:
 - Select [On] or [Off] in "Authenticate Server Certificate".
 - Select [On] or [Off] in "Trust Intermediate Certificate Authority".
 - Enter the host name of the RADIUS server on "Server ID".

7. Click [OK].

8. Click [Configuration], and then click [Wireless LAN Settings] in the "Interface" area.

9. Select [Wireless LAN] in "LAN Type".

10. Select [Infrastructure Mode] in "Communication Mode".

11. Enter the alphanumeric characters (a-z, A-Z, or 0-9) in [SSID] according to the access point you want to use.

12. Select [WPA] in "Security Method".

13. Select [TKIP] or [CCMP (AES)] in "WPA Encryption Method" according to the access point you want to use.

14. Select [WPA] or [WPA2] in "WPA Authentication Method".

15. Click [OK].

16. Click [Logout].

17. Quit the Web Image Monitor.

Note

- If there is a problem with settings, you might not be able to communicate with the printer. To identify the problem, print a network summary.
- If you cannot identify the problem, reset the printer interface to normal, and then repeat the procedure from the beginning.

Specifications

Interface	1000BASE-T, 100BASE-TX, 10BASE-T, IEEE 802.11 a/b/g	
Frame type	Ethernet II, IEEE 802.2, IEEE 802.3, SNAP	
Printer (LAN-Fax)	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6)	
		LPR
		RSH
		RCP
		DIPRINT
		FTP
		IPP
		IPP-SSL
	IPX/SPX (NetWare)	
	AppleTalk	
	SMB	
	WSD (Printer)	
	RHPP	
Internet Fax	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6)	
		SMTP
		SMTP-C
		POP3
		IMAP4
Network Scanner	IPv4/IPv6	
		RSH
		FTP

	FTP-C
	SMTP
	SMTP-C
	POP3
	SMB
	NCP
Document Server	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6)
	FTP
	FTP-C
	HTTP
	HTTPS
Management Function	TCP/IP (IPv4/IPv6)
	RSH
	RCP
	FTP
	FTP-C
	SNMP
	SNMP-C
	HTTP
	HTTPS
	TELNET (mshell)
	NBT
	DHCP
	DNS
	DNS-C
	LDAP

To use IPP and SMB, use the SmartDeviceMonitor for Client port.

To use IPP under Windows XP/Vista, Windows Server 2003/2003 R2/2008, use the Standard IPP port.

To use IPP under Windows 2000, use SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.

AppleTalk can be used when the PostScript 3 module is installed.

Under Windows Vista, or Windows Server 2008, WSD (Printer), WSD (Scanner), uses the WSD Port.

Only the rsh / rcp commands in the Unix OS standard command set are supported.

Copyrights

expat

- The software including controller, etc. (hereinafter "software") installed on this product uses the expat under the conditions mentioned below.
- The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the software of the product including the expat, and the product manufacturer makes the initial developer and copyright holder of the expat, free from these obligations.
- Information relating to the expat is available at:
<http://expat.sourceforge.net/>

Copyright (c) 1998, 1999, 2000 Thai Open Source Software Centre, Ltd. and Clark Cooper.

Copyright (c) 2001, 2002 Expat maintainers.

Permission is hereby granted, free of charge, to any person obtaining a copy of this software and associated documentation files (the "Software"), to deal in the Software without restriction, including without limitation the rights to use, copy, modify, merge, publish, distribute, sublicense, and/or sell copies of the Software, and to permit persons to whom the Software is furnished to do so, subject to the following conditions:

The above copyright notice and this permission notice shall be included in all copies or substantial portions of the Software.

THE SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS", WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO THE WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NONINFRINGEMENT. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHORS OR COPYRIGHT HOLDERS BE LIABLE FOR ANY CLAIM, DAMAGES OR OTHER LIABILITY, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, TORT OR OTHERWISE, ARISING FROM, OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE SOFTWARE OR THE USE OR OTHER DEALINGS IN THE SOFTWARE.

NetBSD

1. Copyright Notice of NetBSD

For all users to use this product:

This product contains NetBSD operating system:

For the most part, the software constituting the NetBSD operating system is not in the public domain; its authors retain their copyright.

The following text shows the copyright notice used for many of the NetBSD source code. For exact copyright notice applicable for each of the files/binaries, the source code tree must be consulted.

A full source code can be found at <http://www.netbsd.org/>.

Copyright (c) 1999, 2000 The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:

This product includes software developed by The NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.

4. Neither the name of The NetBSD Foundation nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE NETBSD FOUNDATION, INC. AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE FOUNDATION OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

2. Authors Name List

All product names mentioned herein are trademarks of their respective owners.

The following notices are required to satisfy the license terms of the software that we have mentioned in this document:

- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Berkeley and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan R. Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the NetBSD Foundation, Inc. and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Manuel Bouyer.
- This product includes software developed by Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Charles M. Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou.
- This product includes software developed by Tools GmbH.
- This product includes software developed by Terrence R. Lambert.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass and Charles Hannum.
- This product includes software developed by Theo de Raadt.

- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone and Jason R. Thorpe for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by the University of California, Lawrence Berkeley Laboratory and its contributors.
- This product includes software developed by Christos Zoulas.
- This product includes software developed by Christopher G. Demetriou for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Paul Kranenburg.
- This product includes software developed by Adam Glass.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone.
- This product includes software developed by Jonathan Stone for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed by Winning Strategies, Inc.
- This product includes software developed by Frank van der Linden for the NetBSD Project.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Frank van der Linden.
- This product includes software developed for the NetBSD Project by Jason R. Thorpe.
- The software was developed by the University of California, Berkeley.
- This product includes software developed by Chris Provenzano, the University of California, Berkeley, and contributors.

Sablotron

Sablotron (Version 0.82) Copyright (c) 2000 Ginger Alliance Ltd. All Rights Reserved.

a) The application software installed on this product includes the Sablotron software Version 0.82 (hereinafter, "Sablotron 0.82"), with modifications made by the product manufacturer. The original code of the Sablotron 0.82 is provided by Ginger Alliance Ltd., the initial developer, and the modified code of the Sablotron 0.82 has been derived from such original code provided by Ginger Alliance Ltd.

b) The product manufacturer provides warranty and support to the application software of this product including the Sablotron 0.82 as modified, and the product manufacturer makes Ginger Alliance Ltd., the initial developer of the Sablotron 0.82, free from these obligations.

c) The Sablotron 0.82 and the modifications thereof are made available under the terms of Mozilla Public License Version 1.1 (hereinafter, "MPL 1.1"), and the application software of this product constitutes the "Larger Work" as defined in MPL 1.1. The application software of this product except for the Sablotron 0.82 as modified is licensed by the product manufacturer under separate agreement (s).

d) The source code of the modified code of the Sablotron 0.82 is available at: <http://support-download.com/services/device/sablot/notice082.html>

e) The source code of the Sablotron software is available at: <http://www.gingerall.com>

f) MPL 1.1 is available at: <http://www.mozilla.org/MPL/MPL-1.1.html>

JPEG LIBRARY

- The software installed on this product is based in part on the work of the Independent JPEG Group.

SASL

CMU libsassl

Tim Martin

Rob Earhart

Rob Siemborski

Copyright (c) 2001 Carnegie Mellon University. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. The name "Carnegie Mellon University" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission.

For permission or any other legal details, please contact:

Office of Technology Transfer

Carnegie Mellon University

5000 Forbes Avenue

Pittsburgh, PA 15213-3890

(412) 268-4387, fax: (412) 268-7395

tech-transfer@andrew.cmu.edu

4. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment: "This product includes software developed by Computing Services at Carnegie Mellon University (<http://www.cmu.edu/computing/>)."

CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES WITH REGARD TO THIS SOFTWARE, INCLUDING ALL IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS, IN NO EVENT SHALL CARNEGIE MELLON UNIVERSITY BE LIABLE FOR ANY SPECIAL, INDIRECT OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES OR ANY DAMAGES WHATSOEVER RESULTING FROM LOSS OF USE, DATA OR PROFITS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION OF CONTRACT, NEGLIGENCE OR OTHER TORTIOUS ACTION, ARISING OUT OF OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

MD4

Copyright (c) 1990-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. All rights reserved.

License to copy and use this software is granted provided that it is identified as the "RSA Data Security, Inc. MD4 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing this software or this function.

License is also granted to make and use derivative works provided that such works are identified as "derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD4 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing the derived work.

RSA Data Security, Inc. makes no representations concerning either the merchantability of this software or the suitability of this software for any particular purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty of any kind.

These notices must be retained in any copies of any part of this documentation and/or software.

MD5

Copyright (c) 1991-2, RSA Data Security, Inc. Created 1991. All rights reserved.

License to copy and use this software is granted provided that it is identified as the "RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing this software or this function.

License is also granted to make and use derivative works provided that such works are identified as "derived from the RSA Data Security, Inc. MD5 Message-Digest Algorithm" in all material mentioning or referencing the derived work.

RSA Data Security, Inc. makes no representations concerning either the merchantability of this software or the suitability of this software for any particular purpose. It is provided "as is" without express or implied warranty of any kind.

These notices must be retained in any copies of any part of this documentation and/or software.

Samba(Ver 3.0.4)

For SMB transmission, this machine uses Samba ver 3.0.4 (hereinafter referred to as Samba 3.0.4).

Copyright (c) Andrew Tridgell 1994-1998.

This program is free software; you can redistribute it and/or modify it under the terms of the GNU General Public License as published by the Free Software Foundation; either version 2 of the License, or (at your option) any later version.

This program is distributed in the hope that it will be useful, but WITHOUT ANY WARRANTY; without even the implied warranty of MERCHANTABILITY or FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. See the GNU General Public License along with this program; if not, write to the Free Software Foundation, Inc., 675 Mass Ave, Cambridge, MA 02139, USA.

Note

- The source code for SMB transmission by this machine can be downloaded from the following website:
- <http://support-download.com/services/scbs>

RSA BSAFE®



- This product includes RSA BSAFE(c) cryptographic or security protocol software from RSA Security Inc.
- RSA and BSAFE are registered trademarks of RSA Security Inc. in the United States and/or other countries.
- RSA Security Inc. All rights reserved.

Open SSL

Copyright (c) 1998-2004 The OpenSSL Project. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit. (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

4. The names "OpenSSL Toolkit" and "OpenSSL Project" must not be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without prior written permission. For written permission, please contact openssl-core@openssl.org.

5. Products derived from this software may not be called "OpenSSL" nor may "OpenSSL" appear in their names without prior written permission of the OpenSSL Project.

6. Redistributions of any form whatsoever must retain the following acknowledgment:

"This product includes software developed by the OpenSSL Project for use in the OpenSSL Toolkit (<http://www.openssl.org/>)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OpenSSL PROJECT "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OpenSSL PROJECT OR ITS CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (ey@cryptsoft.com). This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Original SSLeay License

Copyright (C) 1995-1998 Eric Young (ey@cryptsoft.com) All rights reserved.

This package is an SSL implementation written by Eric Young (ey@cryptsoft.com). The implementation was written so as to conform with Netscapes SSL.

This library is free for commercial and non-commercial use as long as the following conditions are aheared to. The following conditions apply to all code found in this distribution, be it the RC4, RSA, lhash, DES, etc., code; not just the SSL code. The SSL documentation included with this distribution is covered by the same copyright terms except that the holder is Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com).

Copyright remains Eric Young's, and as such any Copyright notices in the code are not to be removed. If this package is used in a product, Eric Young should be given attribution as the author of the parts of the library used. This can be in the form of a textual message at program startup or in documentation (online or textual) provided with the package.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. All advertising materials mentioning features or use of this software must display the following acknowledgement: "This product includes cryptographic software written by Eric Young (ey@cryptsoft.com)" The word 'cryptographic' can be left out if the rouines from the library being used are not cryptographic related :-).

4. If you include any Windows specific code (or a derivative thereof) from the apps directory (application code) you must include an acknowledgement: "This product includes software written by Tim Hudson (tjh@cryptsoft.com)"

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY ERIC YOUNG "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The licence and distribution terms for any publically available version or derivative of this code cannot be changed. i.e. this code cannot simply be copied and put under another distribution licence.

[including the GNU Public Licence.]

Open SSH

7

The licences which components of this software fall under are as follows. First, we will summarize and say that all components are under a BSD licence, or a licence more free than that.

OpenSSH contains no GPL code.

1)

Copyright (c) 1995 Tatu Ylonen <ylo@cs.hut.fi>, Espoo, Finland All rights reserved

As far as I am concerned, the code I have written for this software can be used freely for any purpose. Any derived versions of this software must be clearly marked as such, and if the derived work is incompatible with the protocol description in the RFC file, it must be called by a name other than "ssh" or "Secure Shell".

[Tatu continues]

However, I am not implying to give any licenses to any patents or copyrights held by third parties, and the software includes parts that are not under my direct control. As far as I know, all included source code is used in accordance with the relevant license agreements and can be used freely for any purpose (the GNU license being the most restrictive); see below for details.

[However, none of that term is relevant at this point in time. All of these restrictively licenced software components which he talks about have been removed from OpenSSH, i.e.,

- RSA is no longer included, found in the OpenSSL library
- IDEA is no longer included, its use is deprecated
- DES is now external, in the OpenSSL library
- GMP is no longer used, and instead we call BN code from OpenSSL

- Zlib is now external, in a library
- The make-ssh-known-hosts script is no longer included
- TSS has been removed
- MD5 is now external, in the OpenSSL library
- RC4 support has been replaced with ARC4 support from OpenSSL
- Blowfish is now external, in the OpenSSL library

[The licence continues]

Note that any information and cryptographic algorithms used in this software are publicly available on the Internet and at any major bookstore, scientific library, and patent office worldwide. More information can be found e.g. at "<http://www.cs.hut.fi/crypto>".

The legal status of this program is some combination of all these permissions and restrictions. Use only at your own responsibility. You will be responsible for any legal consequences yourself; I am not making any claims whether possessing or using this is legal or not in your country, and I am not taking any responsibility on your behalf.

NO WARRANTY

BECAUSE THE PROGRAM IS LICENSED FREE OF CHARGE, THERE IS NO WARRANTY FOR THE PROGRAM, TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW. EXCEPT WHEN OTHERWISE STATED IN WRITING THE COPYRIGHT HOLDERS AND/OR OTHER PARTIES PROVIDE THE PROGRAM "AS IS" WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, EITHER EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE. THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO THE QUALITY AND PERFORMANCE OF THE PROGRAM IS WITH YOU. SHOULD THE PROGRAM PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. IN NO EVENT UNLESS REQUIRED BY APPLICABLE LAW OR AGREED TO IN WRITING WILL ANY COPYRIGHT HOLDER, OR ANY OTHER PARTY WHO MAY MODIFY AND/OR REDISTRIBUTE THE PROGRAM AS PERMITTED ABOVE, BE LIABLE TO YOU FOR DAMAGES, INCLUDING ANY GENERAL, SPECIAL, INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF THE USE OR INABILITY TO USE THE PROGRAM (INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO LOSS OF DATA OR DATA BEING RENDERED INACCURATE OR LOSSES SUSTAINED BY YOU OR THIRD PARTIES OR A FAILURE OF THE PROGRAM TO OPERATE WITH ANY OTHER PROGRAMS), EVEN IF SUCH HOLDER OR OTHER PARTY HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES.

2)

The 32-bit CRC compensation attack detector in deattack.c was contributed by CORE SDI S.A. under a BSD-style license.

Cryptographic attack detector for ssh - source code

Copyright (c) 1998 CORE SDI S.A., Buenos Aires, Argentina. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that this copyright notice is retained.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL CORE SDI S.A. BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES RESULTING FROM THE USE OR MISUSE OF THIS SOFTWARE.

Ariel Futoransky <futo@core-sdi.com>

<<http://www.core-sdi.com>>

3)

One component of the ssh source code is under a 3-clause BSD license, held by the University of California, since we pulled these parts from original Berkeley code.

Copyright (c) 1983, 1990, 1992, 1993, 1995

The Regents of the University of California. All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

4)

Remaining components of the software are provided under a standard 2-term BSD licence with the following names as copyright holders:

Markus Friedl

Theo de Raadt

Niels Provos

Dug Song

Kevin Steves

Daniel Kouril

Wesley Griffin

Per Allansson

Jason Downs

Solar Designer

Todd C. Miller

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE AUTHOR "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE AUTHOR BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

5)

Portable OpenSSH contains the following additional licenses:

c) Compatibility code (openbsd-compat)

Apart from the previously mentioned licenses, various pieces of code in the openbsd-compat/ subdirectory are licensed as follows:

Some code is licensed under a 3-term BSD license, to the following copyright holders:

Todd C. Miller

Theo de Raadt

Damien Miller

Eric P. Allman

The Regents of the University of California

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.

2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.

3. Neither the name of the University nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE REGENTS AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE REGENTS OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

Open LDAP

The OpenLDAP Public License Version 2.8, 17 August 2003.

Redistribution and use of this software and associated documentation ("Software"), with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions in source form must retain copyright statements and notices,
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce applicable copyright statements and notices, this list of conditions, and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution, and
3. Redistributions must contain a verbatim copy of this document.

The OpenLDAP Foundation may revise this license from time to time. Each revision is distinguished by a version number. You may use this Software under terms of this license revision or under the terms of any subsequent revision of the license.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE OPENLDAP FOUNDATION AND ITS CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESSED OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE OPENLDAP FOUNDATION, ITS CONTRIBUTORS, OR THE AUTHOR(S) OR OWNER(S) OF THE SOFTWARE BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

The names of the authors and copyright holders must not be used in advertising or otherwise to promote the sale, use or other dealing in this Software without specific, written prior permission. Title to copyright in this Software shall at all times remain with copyright holders.

OpenLDAP is a registered trademark of the OpenLDAP Foundation.

Copyright (c) 1999-2003 The OpenLDAP Foundation, Redwood City, California, USA. All Rights Reserved. Permission to copy and distribute verbatim copies of this document is granted.

Heimdal

Copyright (c) 1997-2005 Kungliga Tekniska Högskolan (Royal Institute of Technology, Stockholm, Sweden). All rights reserved.

Redistribution and use in source and binary forms, with or without modification, are permitted provided that the following conditions are met:

1. Redistributions of source code must retain the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer.
2. Redistributions in binary form must reproduce the above copyright notice, this list of conditions and the following disclaimer in the documentation and/or other materials provided with the distribution.
3. Neither the name of the Institute nor the names of its contributors may be used to endorse or promote products derived from this software without specific prior written permission.

THIS SOFTWARE IS PROVIDED BY THE INSTITUTE AND CONTRIBUTORS "AS IS" AND ANY EXPRESS OR IMPLIED WARRANTIES, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY AND FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE ARE DISCLAIMED. IN NO EVENT SHALL THE INSTITUTE OR CONTRIBUTORS BE LIABLE FOR ANY DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL, EXEMPLARY, OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES (INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, PROCUREMENT OF SUBSTITUTE GOODS OR SERVICES; LOSS OF USE, DATA, OR PROFITS; OR BUSINESS INTERRUPTION) HOWEVER CAUSED AND ON ANY THEORY OF LIABILITY, WHETHER IN CONTRACT, STRICT LIABILITY, OR TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE OR OTHERWISE) ARISING IN ANY WAY OUT OF THE USE OF THIS SOFTWARE, EVEN IF ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGE.

IPS™ print language emulations

Copyright (c) 1987-2006 Zoran Corporation. All rights reserved.

Trademarks

Microsoft®, Windows®, Windows Server®, and Windows Vista® are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Microsoft Corporation in the United States and/or other countries.

Adobe, Acrobat, Acrobat Reader, Adobe Reader, PostScript, and Reader are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Adobe Systems Incorporated in the United States and/or countries.

Apple, AppleTalk, Bonjour, EtherTalk, Macintosh, Mac OS and TrueType are registered trademarks of Apple Inc, registered in the U.S. and other countries.

Citrix Presentation Server™ are registered trademarks of Citrix Systems, Inc.

IPS is a trademark or registered trademark of Zoran Corporation and/or its subsidiaries in the United States or other countries.

Linux® is the registered trademark of Linus Torvalds in the U.S. and other countries.

Monotype is a registered trademark of Monotype Imaging Inc.

NetWare, IPX, IPX/SPX are either registered trademarks or trademarks of Novell, Inc.

PCL® is a registered trademark of Hewlett-Packard Company.

The Bluetooth® word mark and logos are registered trademarks owned by Bluetooth SIG, Inc. and any use of such marks by Ricoh Company, Ltd is under license.

UNIX is a registered trademark of The Open Group.

UPnP™ is a trademark of the UPnP™ Implementers Corporation.

Other product names used herein are for identification purposes only and might be trademarks of their respective companies. We disclaim any and all right to those marks.

The proper names of the Windows operating systems are as follows:

*The product names of Windows 2000 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Professional

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Server

Microsoft® Windows® 2000 Advanced Server

*The product names of Windows XP are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows® XP Professional

Microsoft® Windows® XP Home Edition

Microsoft® Windows® XP Media Center Edition

Microsoft® Windows® XP Tablet PC Edition

*The product names of Windows Vista are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Ultimate

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Business

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Premium

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Home Basic

Microsoft® Windows Vista® Enterprise

*The product names of Windows Server 2003 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Web Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 Datacenter Edition

*The product names of Windows Server 2003 R2 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Standard Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Enterprise Edition

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2003 R2 Datacenter Edition

*The product names of Windows Server 2008 are as follows:

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Standard

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Enterprise

Microsoft® Windows Server® 2008 Datacenter

INDEX

A

Account for e-mail notification.....	158
Ad-hoc channel.....	35
Adding a group to another group.....	293
Address book.....	237
Address book change order.....	46
Address book edit title.....	48
Address book management.....	45
Address book program / change / delete group..	46
Address book switch title.....	49
Administrator authentication management.....	51
Administrator mode.....	126
Administrator tools.....	45
Administrator's e-mail address.....	41
AOF.....	53
Authentication information.....	247
Auto delete file in document server.....	52
Auto erase memory setting.....	53
Auto logout timer.....	29
Auto off timer	
type 1.....	28
type 2.....	28
Auto specify sender name.....	43
AutoNet.....	317

B

Back up / Restore address book.....	49
Bidirectional communication.....	34
Bluetooth.....	312
adding a printer.....	312

C

Capture server IP address.....	38
Changing a fax destination.....	259
Changing a group name.....	297
Changing a Registered IP-Fax destination.....	264
Changing a registered name.....	244
Changing a user code.....	249
Changing an e-mail destination.....	270
Changing an FTP folder.....	281
Changing an NCP registered folder.....	287
Changing an SMB folder.....	276
Clearing the number of prints.....	254

Communication mode.....	35
Connecting the telephone line.....	108
Connecting to the interfaces.....	65
Copier/Document server auto reset timer.....	28
Copy Count Display.....	20
Copyrights.....	335
Cover sheet tray.....	26

D

Data security for copying.....	54
DDNS configuration.....	31
Default user name / password (send).....	42
Delete all files in document server.....	52
Delete all logs.....	53
Deleting a fax destination.....	261
Deleting a group.....	299
Deleting a group within another group.....	296
Deleting a registered IP-Fax destination.....	267
Deleting a registered name.....	245
Deleting a user code.....	250
Deleting an e-mail destination.....	271
Deleting an FTP folder.....	283
Deleting an NCP folder.....	289
Deleting an SMB registered folder.....	278
Delivery option.....	38
DHCP.....	317
DHCPv6.....	317
Dial-up router.....	323
Direct printing.....	307
Display / Clear / Print counter per user.....	50
Display / Print counter.....	50
Display Panel.....	16
Displayed information.....	214
Displaying names registered in a group.....	294
Displaying the counter for each user.....	252
DNS configuration.....	30
Document server	
ethernet.....	96
wireless LAN.....	97
Domain name.....	31
Dynamic DNS.....	320

E

E-mail	
--------	--

ethernet.....	80
wireless LAN.....	81
E-mail communication port.....	41
E-mail destination.....	268
E-mail reception interval.....	41
E-mail storage in server.....	42
Effective Protocol.....	31
Energy saver level.....	53
Enhanced external charge unit management.....	51
Erase all memory.....	53
Ethernet interface.....	66
Ethernet speed.....	32
Extended security.....	51
External charge unit management.....	51
External telephone.....	108

F

Facsimile auto reset timer.....	29
Fax destination.....	256
Fax e-mail account.....	43
Fax number.....	256
Fax RX file transmission.....	38
File transfer.....	38
Firmware version.....	53
Fixed USB port.....	54
Format of on-demand e-mail messages.....	161
ftp.....	203, 212, 214, 226, 308
Function Priority.....	20
Function Reset Timer.....	20

G

General features.....	19
Gigabit ethernet interface.....	67
Group	
registering names to group.....	291
Guest mode.....	126

H

Host name.....	33, 307
----------------	---------

I

IEEE 1284 interface.....	70
IEEE 802.11 a/b/g interface	
checking the signal.....	72
connecting.....	70

setup procedure.....	71
IEEE 802.11 interface.....	326
IEEE 802.1X.....	327
device certificate.....	328
ethernet.....	329
site certificate.....	327
wireless LAN.....	330
IEEE 802.1X authentication for ethernet.....	32
info.....	212, 214
Input prime.....	34
Interface settings.....	30
Internet Fax	
ethernet.....	76
wireless LAN.....	78
IP address.....	14
IPP.....	175
IPsec.....	31
IPv4 gateway address.....	30
IPv6.....	176
IPv6 gateway address.....	30
IPv6 stateless address autoconfiguration.....	30

K

Key counter management.....	51
Key Repeat.....	21

L

LAN type.....	33
Laws and regulations.....	15
LDAP.....	55
changing.....	59
deleting.....	59
programming.....	55
LDAP authentication.....	304
LDAP search.....	52
Legal prohibition.....	15
Limitations.....	315
Line type.....	108
Locating the NCP folder manually.....	286
Locating the NCP folder using browse network.....	287
Locating the SMB folder manually.....	275
Locating the SMB folder using Browse Network.....	275
Login	

administrator mode.....	128
Web Image Monitor.....	126
lpr.....	203, 308

M

Machine data encryption settings.....	54
Machine IPv4 address.....	30
Machine IPv6 address.....	30
Machine name.....	33
Machine status.....	154
Managing names in the address book.....	240
Managing users and machine usage.....	241
Max. reception e-mail size.....	41
Message.....	226
MetaFrame.....	315
Monitoring printers.....	153

N

NCP delivery protocol.....	31
NetWare.....	112
banner page.....	325
form feed.....	325
printing.....	324
NetWare 3.x.....	113, 117
NetWare 4.x.....	114, 119
NetWare 5.....	114, 115, 119
NetWare 5.1.....	114, 115, 119
NetWare 6.....	114, 115, 119
NetWare 6.5.....	114, 115, 119
Network.....	30
Network delivery scanner	
ethernet.....	87
wireless LAN.....	88
Network interface board configuration.....	215
Network security level.....	53
Network settings	
file transfer.....	105
interface settings.....	99
Network TWAIN scanner	
ethernet.....	93
wireless LAN.....	94
Note.....	13
Notice.....	12
Number of scanner resends.....	44
NW frame type.....	31

O

Optional handset.....	108
Output Copier.....	20
Output Document Server.....	20
Output Facsimile.....	21
Output Printer.....	21
Output tray settings.....	21

P

Panel Key Sound.....	20
Panel off timer.....	28
Paper Tray Priority	
copier.....	23
facsimile.....	23
printer.....	23
Paper Type	
bypass tray.....	24
tray 1.....	25
tray 2.....	25
tray 3 (lower paper tray).....	25
tray 4 (lower paper tray).....	25
Parallel communication speed.....	34
Parallel Interface.....	33
Parallel timing.....	34
Permit SNMPv3 communication.....	33
Permit SSL / TLS communication.....	33
Ping command.....	33
POP before SMTP.....	40
POP3 / IMAP4 settings.....	40
Preventing unauthorized user access to shared folders from the machine.....	241
Print address book destination list.....	48
Print job information	
ftp.....	214
info.....	214
rcp.....	214
rsh.....	214
sftp.....	214
Print List.....	36
Print log information	
ftp.....	214
prnlog.....	214
rcp.....	214
rsh.....	214
sftp.....	214

Print Priority.....	20	NetWare 6.5.....	115
Print server		R	
NetWare 4.x.....	114	rcp.....	203, 212, 214, 226, 308
NetWare 5.....	114	Realm.....	61
NetWare 5.1.....	114	changing.....	62
NetWare 6.....	114	deleting.....	63
NetWare 6.5.....	114	programming.....	61
Print Server		Reception protocol.....	40
NetWare 3.x.....	113	Registering a fax destination.....	257
Printer auto reset timer.....	29	Registering a Group.....	290
Printer configuration		Registering a protection code.....	300
ftp.....	212	Registering a protection code to a group user.....	301
info.....	212	Registering a protection code to a single user.....	300
rcp.....	212	Registering a user code.....	247
rsh.....	212	Registering an e-mail destination.....	268
sftp.....	212	Registering an FTP folder.....	279
Printer server.....	111	Registering an IP-Fax destination.....	263
Printer status		Registering an NCP folder.....	284
ftp.....	203	Registering an SMB folder.....	273
rcp.....	203	Registering folders.....	273
rsh.....	203	Registering names.....	243
sftp.....	203	Registering names to a group.....	290
status.....	203	Remote maintenance.....	162
Printer Status		Remote printer	
lpr.....	203	NetWare 3.x.....	117
Printer/LAN-Fax		NetWare 4.x.....	119
ethernet.....	73	NetWare 5.....	119
wireless LAN.....	74	NetWare 5.1.....	119
Printing commands		NetWare 6.....	119
ftp.....	308	NetWare 6.5.....	119
lpr.....	308	Removing a name from a group.....	295
rcp.....	308	Restore factory defaults.....	36
sftp.....	308	Restore IEEE 802.1X authentication to defaults.....	32
Printing the counter for all users.....	253	rsh.....	203, 212, 214, 226
Printing the counter for each user.....	252	S	
prnlog.....	214	Scan to folder function	
Program / Change / Delete e-mail message.....	42	ethernet.....	84
Program / Change / Delete LDAP server.....	52	wireless LAN.....	85
Program / Change / Delete realm.....	53	Scanner auto reset timer.....	29
Program / Change administrator.....	51	Scanner resend interval time.....	43
Program/Change/Delete User Text.....	19	Security method.....	35
Pure IP environment			
NetWare 5.....	115		
NetWare 5.1.....	115		
NetWare 6.....	115		

Selection signal status.....	34	System auto reset timer.....	28
Sending e-mail by quick dial.....	241	System log information	
Sending fax by quick dial.....	240	ftp.....	226
Sending scanned files to a shared folder directly...	241	rcp.....	226
Service mode lock.....	53	rsh.....	226
Set date.....	29	sftp.....	226
Set time.....	29	syslog.....	226
sftp.....	203, 212, 214, 226, 308	System Status/Job List Display Time.....	21
Signal control.....	34	T	
Slip sheet tray.....	26	telnet.....	162
SmartDeviceMonitor for Admin.....	137	8021x.....	200
address information.....	151	access.....	163
comments.....	149	appletalk.....	164
Energy Saver Mode.....	147	authfree.....	164
exporting the information on about the number of pages printed.....	143	autonet.....	165
fax journal.....	150	bonjour.....	166
installing.....	138	btconfig.....	167
locking the menus.....	140	devicename.....	167
machine status.....	148	dhcp.....	168
names.....	149	dhcp6.....	169
Network Interface Board.....	139	diprint.....	169
new users.....	145	dns.....	170
number of sheets printed.....	142	domainname.....	172
paper type.....	141	etherauth.....	173
resetting the number of pages printed.....	143	help.....	173
restricting functions.....	145	hostname.....	173
setting a password.....	147	ifconfig.....	174
spool print.....	151	info.....	175
User Information.....	142	ipsec.....	176
user management tool.....	142	logout.....	176
SmartDeviceMonitor for Client.....	153	lpr.....	177
IPP.....	154	netware.....	177
machine status.....	154	passwd.....	179
monitoring printers.....	153	pathmtu.....	179
SMB computer name.....	32	prnlog.....	180
SMB work group.....	32	rhttp.....	181
SMTP authentication.....	39, 303	route.....	180
SMTP server.....	39	set.....	182
SNMP.....	202	show.....	185
SSID setting.....	35	slp.....	185
status.....	203	smb.....	185
Supported printer drivers.....	315	snmp.....	186
Symbol.....	13	snmp.....	189
syslog.....	226	spoolsw.....	190
		ssdp.....	191
		ssh.....	191
		status.....	192

syslog.....	192	setting items.....	128
upnp.....	192	top page.....	124
web.....	193	Windows Terminal Service.....	315
wiconfig.....	193	WINS configuration.....	31
wins.....	197	WINS server.....	318
wsmfp.....	199	telnet.....	318
Timer settings.....	28	Web Image Monitor.....	318
To change the fax number.....	260	Wireless LAN.....	34, 326
To change the SEP code.....	260	Wireless LAN interface	
To change the SUB code.....	260	checking the signal.....	72
To select the fax header.....	260	connecting.....	70
To set label insertion.....	261	setup procedure.....	71
To set the international TX mode.....	260	Wireless LAN signal.....	36
Top Page.....	124	WSD scanner	
Trademarks.....	348	ethernet.....	90
Transfer log setting.....	53	wireless LAN.....	91
Tray paper settings.....	23		
Tray Paper Size			
tray 1.....	23		
tray 2.....	23		
tray 3 (lower paper tray).....	24		
tray 4 (lower paper tray).....	24		

U

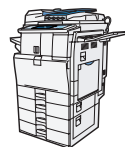
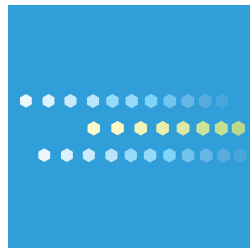
USB interface.....	69
User Authentication management.....	50
User tools.....	17
change the settings.....	17
quit the settings.....	18

V

Virtual printer.....	308
----------------------	-----

W

Warm-up Beeper.....	20
Web Image Monitor.....	123
administrator mode.....	126
auto e-mail notification.....	159
e-mail notification.....	156
guest mode.....	126
help.....	135
log out.....	126
login.....	126
mail authentication.....	158
menu.....	126
mode.....	126
on-demand e-mail notification.....	160



Type for C9020/MP C2050/LD520c/Aficio MP C2050
Type for C9025/MP C2550/LD525c/Aficio MP C2550